Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

Edited by Márcia Aparecida Sperança

Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

Published in London, UK

© 2020 IntechOpen


ISSN  2631-6188
Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

Edited by Márcia Aparecida Sperança

Published in London, United Kingdom
Supporting open minds since 2005
We are IntechOpen, the world’s leading publisher of Open Access books
Built by scientists, for scientists

5,000+
Open access books available

126,000+
International authors and editors

145M+
Downloads

151
Countries delivered to

Top 1%
Our authors are among the most cited scientists

12.2%
Contributors from top 500 universities

WEB OF SCIENCE™
Selection of our books indexed in the Book Citation Index in Web of Science™ Core Collection (BKCI)

Interested in publishing with us?
Contact book.department@intechopen.com

Numbers displayed above are based on latest data collected.
For more information visit www.intechopen.com
Márcia Aparecida Sperança is Associate Professor at the Center for Natural and Human Sciences of Universidade Federal do ABC (UFABC, São Bernardo do Campo, São Paulo, Brazil). After obtaining a PhD in Biology of Parasite–Host Interaction from the Parasitology Department of the Biomedical Institute of University of São Paulo (Brazil), Dr. Sperança worked as an assistant professor and researcher at Marilia Medical School (Marilia, São Paulo, Brazil). Her scientific experience is in diagnosis, molecular biology, and molecular epidemiology of different infectious agents including arboviruses, the bacteria *Helicobacter pylori*, malaria parasites, and trypanosomatids. Presently, Dr. Sperança is the head of the Laboratory of Pathogenic Agents at UFABC, an institution with multi and interdisciplinary academic proposals, which are characteristics of her investigation field.

**Editor of Volume 7:**
Márcia Aparecida Sperança  
Universidade Federal do ABC - Center for Natural and Human Sciences,  
São Paulo, Brazil

**Book Series Editor:**  
Shailendra K. Saxena  
King George’s Medical University
Scope of the Series

The series will give a most comprehensive overview of recent trends in various infectious diseases (as per the most recent Baltimore classification), as well as general concepts of infections, immunopathology, diagnosis, treatment, epidemiology and etiology to current clinical recommendations in management of infectious diseases, highlighting the ongoing issues, recent advances, with future directions in diagnostic approaches and therapeutic strategies. This book series will focus on various aspects and properties of infectious diseases whose deep understanding is very important for safeguarding human race from more loss of resources and economies due to pathogens.
Contents

Preface XIII

Section 1 1
Biological and Environmental Aspects

Chapter 1 3
Dengue Fever: An Overview
by Ramalingam Kothai and Balasubramanian Arul

Chapter 2 17
Lessons Learned and Recent Advances in Dengue Research
by Juan Samuel Sulca Herencia

Chapter 3 33
Situation of Dengue after the Phenomenon of the Coastal El Niño
by Cristian Díaz-Vélez, Jorge Luis Fernández-Mogollón,
John Alexis Cabrera-Enríquez, Stalin Tello-Vera,
Oscar Medrano-Velásquez and Elmer Córdova-Calle

Section 2 57
Immunopathogenesis

Chapter 4 59
Dengue Immunopathogenesis: A Crosstalk between Host
and Viral Factors Leading to Disease: Part I - Dengue Virus
Tropism, Host Innate Immune Responses, and Subversion
of Antiviral Responses
by Henry Puerta-Guardo, Scott B. Biering, Eva Harris,
Norma Pavia-Ruz, Gonzalo Vázquez-Prokopec,
Guadalupe Ayora-Talavera and Pablo Manrique-Saide

Chapter 5 93
Dengue Immunopathogenesis: A Crosstalk between Host
and Viral Factors Leading to Disease: PART II - DENV Infection,
Adaptive Immune Responses, and NS1 Pathogenesis
by Henry Puerta-Guardo, Scott B. Biering, Eva Harris,
Norma Pavia-Ruz, Gonzalo Vázquez-Prokopec,
Guadalupe Ayora-Talavera and Pablo Manrique-Saide
Preface

The One Health approach from the World Health Organization has emerged to translate the interrelationships between human, animal, and environmental health. Anthropogenic movements result in modifications of the wild natural habitat, such as the destruction of forest areas, the introduction of domestic animals, and the improvisation of sanitation conditions. Climate changes can affect and modulate pathogen epidemics by providing conditions for the proliferation of arthropod vectors of infectious diseases. In this scenario, dengue fever is the most important arthropod-borne disease worldwide.

The dengue virus (DENV) occurs in four different serotypes and is transmitted by mosquitoes from the genus *Aedes*, principally *Ae. aegypti* and *Ae. Albopictus*. The first section of the book contains chapters on general aspects of virus biology, epidemiology, transmission routes, natural history, and vector biology. Chapters 1 and 2 describe for the first time the role of *Aedes* species in the transmission cycle of DENV in different global regions, and Chapter 3 examines the role of environmental changes associated to proliferation of *Aedes* vectors.

The pathophysiologic characteristics of diseases caused by DENV infection is a result of the complex interaction of different virus serotypes and genotypes with the immune system of the human host. Chapters 4 and 5 in the second section of the book cover humoral and cellular immune responses associated to immunopathology caused by DENV infection. Knowledge of immune response to DENV is of major importance to development of a secure vaccine.

In the third section of the book, three different chapters describe how molecular biology tools can help in the establishment of new strategies for the study and management of epidemics caused by dengue viruses. Chapter 6 focuses on miRNA studies to investigate DENV replication, vector proliferation, and infection, bringing new possibilities to vector control strategies. Chapter 7 present an excellent review on phage display technologies and discusses its use in DENV diagnosis and drug therapy. Chapter 8 describes a simple method to extract RNA from single specimen of mosquitoes, contributing to new possibilities to explore arthropod vector biology.

This book contributes to the knowledge of different aspects of DENV biological interactions in the perspective of the One Health concept, inspiring a broad public, including undergraduate and post-graduate students, researchers from different knowledge areas, and health professionals, to reflect on global recurrent emergent and reemergent arthropod-borne diseases. I am grateful to all authors for their contributions and to IntechOpen for the opportunity to participate as editor of this book on an important global life-threatening disease.
Preface

The One Health approach from the World Health Organization has emerged to translate the interrelationships between human, animal, and environmental health. Anthropogenic movements result in modifications of the wild natural habitat, such as the destruction of forest areas, the introduction of domestic animals, and the improvisation of sanitation conditions. Climate changes can affect and modulate pathogen epidemics by providing conditions for the proliferation of arthropod vectors of infectious diseases. In this scenario, dengue fever is the most important arthropod-borne disease worldwide.

The dengue virus (DENV) occurs in four different serotypes and is transmitted by mosquitoes from the genus *Aedes*, principally *Ae. aegypti* and *Ae. Albopictus*. The first section of the book contains chapters on general aspects of virus biology, epidemiology, transmission routes, natural history, and vector biology. Chapters 1 and 2 describe for the first time the role of *Aedes* species in the transmission cycle of DENV in different global regions, and Chapter 3 examines the role of environmental changes associated to proliferation of *Aedes* vectors.

The pathophysiologic characteristics of diseases caused by DENV infection is a result of the complex interaction of different virus serotypes and genotypes with the immune system of the human host. Chapters 4 and 5 in the second section of the book cover humoral and cellular immune responses associated to immunopathology caused by DENV infection. Knowledge of immune response to DENV is of major importance to development of a secure vaccine.

In the third section of the book, three different chapters describe how molecular biology tools can help in the establishment of new strategies for the study and management of epidemics caused by dengue viruses. Chapter 6 focuses on miRNA studies to investigate DENV replication, vector proliferation, and infection, bringing new possibilities to vector control strategies. Chapter 7 present an excellent review on phage display technologies and discusses its use in DENV diagnosis and drug therapy. Chapter 8 describes a simple method to extract RNA from single specimen of mosquitoes, contributing to new possibilities to explore arthropod vector biology.

This book contributes to the knowledge of different aspects of DENV biological interactions in the perspective of the One Health concept, inspiring a broad public, including undergraduate and post-graduate students, researchers from different knowledge areas, and health professionals, to reflect on global recurrent emergent and reemergent arthropod-borne diseases. I am grateful to all authors for their contributions and to IntechOpen for the opportunity to participate as editor of this book on an important global life-threatening disease.

Márcia Aparecida Sperança, PhD
Universidade Federal do ABC - Center for Natural and Human Sciences,
São Paulo, Brazil
Section 1

Biological and Environmental Aspects
Section 1

Biological and Environmental Aspects
Chapter 1
Dengue Fever: An Overview
Ramalingam Kothai and Balasubramanian Arul

Abstract
Dengue fever is a disease caused by a family of viruses transmitted by mosquitoes. Dengue virus (DENV), a member of the Flaviviridae family, causes the most widespread mosquito-borne viral infection in humans around the world today. Dengue can affect anyone but tends to be more severe in people with compromised immune systems. Dengue hemorrhagic fever is a more severe form of a viral illness. Symptoms include headache, fever, rash, and evidence of bleeding (hemorrhage) in the body. This form of dengue fever can be life-threatening and can progress to the most severe form of the illness, dengue shock syndrome. This chapter reviews the etiology, epidemiology, diagnosis, pathophysiology, transmissions, manifestations, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of dengue.

Keywords: dengue, etiology, epidemiology, pathophysiology

1. Introduction
Dengue fever is a mosquito-borne viral infection which has a sudden onset that follows symptoms such as headache, nausea, weakness, intense muscle and joint pain, swelling of lymph nodes (lymphadenopathy), and rashes on the skin. Many symptoms of dengue fever include gingivitis, sharp pain in the eyes, and swollen palms and soles.

Dengue can affect any person but appears to be more serious in immunocompromised people. Because it is caused by one of the five dengue virus serotypes, it is possible to have dengue fever multiple times. Nonetheless, a dengue attack provides lifelong immunity to the specific viral serotype to which the patient has been exposed. This disease may also be called "breakbone fever" or "dandy fever."

This dengue fever may become more serious and then named as dengue hemorrhagic fever and dengue shock syndrome. Dengue hemorrhagic fever is a more severe form in which hemorrhages occurs in the body. It is a life-threatening condition, and it may progress to the most critical form called dengue shock syndrome [1].

2. Etiology
Dengue virus (DENV) is a single-stranded, positive-sense RNA virus in the Flaviviridae family and the Flavivirus genus. When viewed under the transmission electron micrograph, the virions appear as a bunch of black spots. Yellow fever virus, West Nile virus, St. Louis encephalitis virus, Japanese encephalitis virus, tick-borne encephalitis virus, Kyasanur Forest disease virus, and Omsk hemorrhagic fever virus belong to this family, and majority of them is transmitted by arthropods (mosquitoes or ticks) [2].
Abstract

Dengue fever is a disease caused by a family of viruses transmitted by mosquitoes. Dengue virus (DENV), a member of the *Flaviviridae* family, causes the most widespread mosquito-borne viral infection in humans around the world today. Dengue can affect anyone but tends to be more severe in people with compromised immune systems. Dengue hemorrhagic fever is a more severe form of a viral illness. Symptoms include headache, fever, rash, and evidence of bleeding (hemorrhage) in the body. This form of dengue fever can be life-threatening and can progress to the most severe form of the illness, dengue shock syndrome. This chapter reviews the etiology, epidemiology, diagnosis, pathophysiology, transmissions, manifestations, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of dengue.

Keywords: dengue, etiology, epidemiology, pathophysiology

1. Introduction

Dengue fever is a mosquito-borne viral infection which has a sudden onset that follows symptoms such as headache, nausea, weakness, intense muscle and joint pain, swelling of lymph nodes (lymphadenopathy), and rashes on the skin. Many symptoms of dengue fever include gingivitis, sharp pain in the eyes, and swollen palms and soles.

Dengue can affect any person but appears to be more serious in immunocompromised people. Because it is caused by one of the five dengue virus serotypes, it is possible to have dengue fever multiple times. Nonetheless, a dengue attack provides lifelong immunity to the specific viral serotype to which the patient has been exposed. This disease may also be called “breakbone fever” or “dandy fever.” This dengue fever may become more serious and then named as dengue hemorrhagic fever and dengue shock syndrome. Dengue hemorrhagic fever is a more severe form in which hemorrhages occurs in the body. It is a life-threatening condition, and it may progress to the most critical form called dengue shock syndrome [1].

2. Etiology

Dengue virus (DENV) is a single-stranded, positive-sense RNA virus in the *Flaviviridae* family and the *Flavivirus* genus. When viewed under the transmission electron micrograph, the virions appear as a bunch of black spots. Yellow fever virus, West Nile virus, St. Louis encephalitis virus, Japanese encephalitis virus, tick-borne encephalitis virus, Kyasanur Forest disease virus, and Omsk hemorrhagic fever virus belong to this family, and majority of them is transmitted by arthropods (mosquitoes or ticks) [2].
Approximately 11,000 nucleotide bases were present in the dengue genome, which codes for a single polyprotein. It is made up of three structural protein molecules (C, prM, and E) that constitute the virus particle and seven nonstructural proteins (NS1, NS2a, NS2b, NS3, NS4a, NS4b, and NS5) which are required for viral replication [3, 4]. The five strains of the virus (DENV-1, DENV-2, DENV-3, DENV-4, and DENV-5) are referred to as serotypes because they vary in serum reactivity (antigenicity) [5].

The main cause of dengue fever is an infected mosquito bite [6], and besides it, it may be accidentally acquired after vertical transmission, especially in near-term pregnant women through the placenta [7], infected blood products [8], through organ transplantation [9], and even after needle stick injury [10].

3. Epidemiology

Awareness about the terrestrial spread and impact of dengue is relevant for assessing its relation to worldwide morbidity and mortality and knowing how to utilize the available resources for controlling the dengue globally.

Only nine countries had suffered major epidemics of dengue, before 1970. Currently it is common in most of the regions of the WHO. The Americas, South East Asia, and Western Pacific areas are the most severely affected, with Asia responsible for around 70% of the global disease burden. Throughout the recent decades, the prevalence of dengue has significantly elevated around the globe. The vast majority of cases are asymptomatic or mild and self-managed, and therefore the actual number of dengue cases is underreported. Many cases are also misdiagnosed as other febrile disorders [11].

One report indicates 390 million dengue virus infections per year, of which 96 million occur clinically (with any disease severity). The report on dengue prevalence reports that 3.9 billion people are at risk of infection with dengue viruses. Despite the risk of infection in 128 countries, 70% of the real burden is from Asia [12].

The number of dengue cases recorded to WHO has risen ~6 fold, from <0.5 million in 2010 to more than 3.34 million in 2016. The year 2016 was marked by massive dengue outbreaks worldwide. A major reduction in the number of dengue cases in the Americas was reported in 2017, from 2,177,171 cases in 2016 to 584,263 cases in 2017. It reflects a drop of 73%. Following a drop in the number of cases in 2017–2018, a sharp increase in cases is reported in 2019. Cases have increased in Australia, Cambodia, China, Lao PDR, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore, and Vietnam. An estimated 500,000 people with severe dengue require hospitalization every year, and an estimated 2.5% of cases are fatal each year. Nevertheless, several countries have lowered the case fatality rate to less than 1%, and internationally, there has been a decline in case of fatality between 2010 and 2016, with a significant improvement in case management through country-level capacity building. The only continent that has not witnessed dengue transmission is Antarctica.

The global burden of dengue is formidable and is a growing challenge for public health officials and policymakers. Success in addressing this growing global threat depends, in part, on strengthening the evidence base on which planning control decisions and their impact are assessed. It is hoped that this assessment of the distribution and burden of contemporary dengue risk will help to advance this objective.

4. Pathophysiology

The pathophysiology of DENV and the immune response of the host are not fully understood. Primary manifestations of disease include capillary leak
syndrome (plasma leakage due to DHF-specific endothelial cell dysfunction), thrombocytopenia (seen in all types of DENV infection, but extreme in DHF), hemorrhagic tendencies, and leukopenia. It is known that the major viral envelope (E) of glycoprotein in the virus helps to bind the host cells, followed by viral replication [13]. Data suggest that monocytes are the primary target [14]. Infected monocytes induce the production of interferon-a (IFN-a) and IFN-b [15]. Envelope (E), precursor membrane protein (pre-M), and nonstructural protein 1 (NS1) are the major DENV proteins targeted by antibodies as part of the host immune response. Studies have shown that DENV-specific CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocytes attack infected cells and release IFN-g, tumor necrosis factor-a (TNF-a), and lymphotoxin. Primary infection induces a lifetime immunity of the individual to that particular serotype, but not to secondary infection by another serotype.

Bite of *Aedes Aegypti*

- The virus penetrates to the skin
- The virus infects and replicates inside the Langerhans cell
  - [immunity of the skin]
  - Langerhans cells release interferons [to limit the spread of infections]
  - Infected Langerhans cells go to the lymphatic system to make the immune system alert
  - Then goes to circulation
  - Results in viremia—high levels of virus in the bloodstream
  - Activation of immune response—increases lymphocye
  - Decreases neutrophils and white blood cells
  - Release of pyrogen causes fever and increased blood pressure in vessels—causes rashes
  - Dengue

5. Transmission

Dengue virus is the most common mosquito-borne infection in humans all over the world. It belongs to the family *Flaviviridae*, which contains more than 70 viruses [16], in which DENV is transmitted by the *Aedes aegypti* and *Aedes albopictus* mosquitoes [17].

Dengue virus is spread primarily by *Aedes* mosquitoes, in particular *Aedes aegypti*. These mosquitoes usually live between 35°N and 35°S below an altitude of 1000 m (3300 feet) [5]. They usually bite especially in the early morning and in the evening. Certain *Aedes* disease-borne species include *Aedes albopictus*, *Aedes scutellaris*, and *Aedes polynesiensis*. Human beings are the primary hosts of this virus, arousing even nonhuman primates. An infection may be obtained through a single bite. A female mosquito that consumes an infected person's blood (within a febrile, viremic span of 2 to 12 days) becomes infected with the virus in its intestine. The virus then spread
into other tissues, including the salivary glands of the mosquito, approximately after a period of 8–10 days and is subsequently released into its saliva. When it bites the other person, the virus is transmitted through its saliva to that person. The virus does not cause any harm to the mosquito [18]. *Aedes aegypti* is a main concern as it prefers to lay its eggs in containers of freshwater and stay close to humans. Infected blood products and organ donation can also cause dengue [8, 9, 19]. Even in countries like Singapore, the incidence is approximately 1.6 to 6 in 10,000 transfusions [20]. The vertical transmission (from mother to child) during pregnancy or at birth is also documented [8]. Other person-to-person forms of transmission have also been reported, but are very rare [21]. Dengue's genetic variants are regionally specific, indicating that the creation of new territories is relatively rare, despite the fact that dengue has appeared in new regions in recent decades [22].

### 5.1 The virus

DENV is a small single-stranded RNA virus consisting of five different serotypes (DENV-1 to DENV-5). The virus particle is spherical in shape with a diameter of 50 nm. The genome is divided into three structural proteins (capsid C prM, membrane precursor M protein, and envelope E) and seven nonstructural proteins (NS) by the host and viral proteases.

Within each serotype, distinct genotypes or lineages (viruses closely related in nucleotide sequence) have been identified, demonstrating the substantial genetic variability in dengue serotypes. However, purifying selection continues to be a dominant theme in the evolution of dengue viruses, so only viruses that are “fit” for both humans and vectors are retained. Between these, severe secondary dengue infections are often associated with “European” genotypes DENV-2 and DENV-3 [23–25]. The human hosts have established intra-host viral diversity (quasi-species).

### 5.2 The vectors

Different dengue virus serotypes are transmitted to humans through the bites of infected *Aedes* mosquitoes, mainly *Aedes aegypti*. This mosquito is a tropical and subtropical species widely distributed around the world, mostly between 35°N and 35°S latitudes. Such geographical limits correspond roughly to the 10°C winter isotherm. *Aedes aegypti* was located as far north as 45°N, but in warmer months, these invasions took place, and the mosquitoes did not survive the winter months. *Aedes aegypti* is also relatively uncommon over 1000 m, due to lower temperatures. The embryonic stages are found in water-filled settings, mostly in artificial containers that are closely linked to human dwellings, and often inside. Research suggests that mostly female *Aedes aegypti* may spend their lives in or around the homes where the adults emerge. It means people are spreading the virus quickly within and between populations, rather than mosquitoes. *Aedes albopictus*, *Aedes polynesiensis*, and several species of *Aedes scutellaris* were also attributed to outbreaks of the dengue [26]. Each of these species has a specific ecological, behavioral, and geographical distribution. *Aedes albopictus* has spread from Asia to Africa, Americas, and Europe in recent decades, aided particularly by international trade in used tires, where eggs are deposited as they contain rainwater. Eggs can remain viable for many months, in the absence of water.

### 5.3 The host

After an incubation period of 4–10 days, infection with any of the four virus serotypes can cause a wide range of illnesses, although most infections are
asymptomatic or subclinical. Primary infection is thought to cause long-term defensive immunity to serotype infections [27]. Around 2–3 months of primary infection, but without long-term cross-protective immunity, individuals suffering from infection are protected from clinical illness with a specific serotype.

Personal risk factors influence the severity of the disease and also include secondary infections (bronchial asthma, sickle cell anemia, and diabetes mellitus), age, race, and potentially chronic diseases. In particular, young children may be less able to compensate for capillary leakage than adults and are thus at a higher risk of dengue shock [5].

Seroepidemiological reports conducted in Cuba and Thailand strongly support the position of secondary heterotypic infection as a risk factor for severe dengue, although there is little evidence of serious primary infection cases [28–31]. Also, the time interval between infections and the specific viral infection sequence may be significant. For example, a higher fatality rate was observed in Cuba when DEN2 infection followed DEN-1 infection at an interval of 20 years compared to 4 years. Severe dengue is also commonly seen in infants born to dengue-infected mothers. Antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) of the infection has been hypothesized [32] as a mechanism to explain severe dengue in the course of secondary infection and in infants with primary infections. In this model, non-neutralizing, cross-reactive antibodies produced during primary infection or acquired passively at birth bind to epitopes on the surface of the heterologous infective virus and promote the entry of the virus into Fc-bearing cells. The increased number of infected cells is expected to result in increased viral load and robust host immune response activation including inflammatory cytokines and mediators, some of which may contribute to capillary leakage. Cross-reactive memory T cells are also rapidly triggered during secondary infection, proliferate, release cytokines, and die of apoptosis in a manner that usually correlates with overall disease severity. Host genetic determinants may have an effect on the clinical outcome of infection [33], although most studies have not been able to address this problem adequately. Studies in the American region indicate that the levels of extreme dengue in individuals of African descent are lower than in other ethnic groups [34].

Recent data suggest that endothelial cell activation could mediate plasma leakage [35, 36]. Plasma leakage is believed to be associated with functional effects on endothelial cells, rather than harmful ones. Endothelial cell dysfunction may also be associated with the activation of infected monocytes and T cells, the complement system, and the production of mediators, monokines, cytokines, and soluble receptors.

Thrombocytopenia may be associated with alterations in megacaryocytopoiesis due to human hematopoietic cell infection and impaired progenitor cell growth, resulting in platelet dysfunction (activation and aggregation of platelets), increased destruction, or consumption (peripheral sequestration and consumption). Hemorrhage may result from thrombocytopenia and related platelet dysfunction or intravascular coagulation. In short, a transient and reversible imbalance of inflammatory mediators, cytokine, and chemokine occurs during severe dengue times, probably due to high early viral loads, leading to vascular endothelial cell dysfunction, hemocoagulation disorders, and then plasma leakage, shock, and bleeding.

6. Manifestations

One of three clinical forms can be used in humans, such as dengue fever (DF), dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF), and dengue shock syndrome (DSS).
Approximately one-half of the DENV infections are asymptomatic, and some are undifferentiated (in which the patient develops fever and mild symptoms, but the source of the infection is not diagnosed as DENV). The three clinical forms of the disease vary in the severity of their symptoms, with the influenza-like DF being the least severe and the DSS being the most severe. In most cases, mild febrile DF is not fatal; however, infections that develop into DHF or DSS may be life-threatening and cause death in many cases. Patients with DHF and DSS were found to have virus titers 100- to 1000-fold higher than those with DF from the initial stage of infection [37]. Overall, DENV infection has been found to be more severe in children than adults [38].

Based on the outcome of several studies, the WHO has developed a new dengue classification. It differentiates dengue cases into cases with or without warning signs and serious cases of dengue.

Usually, signs begin to appear after an incubation period of 3–10 days [39]. The severity of clinical presentations ranges from mild symptoms to extreme life-threatening symptoms for dengue hemorrhagic fever and dengue shock syndrome [40]. Predicting the progression of mild signs to severe DHF/DSS remains a challenge due to unspecific clinical presentation and incomplete understanding of disease pathophysiology and its underlying molecular mechanisms.

The early signs of the disease are nonspecific. According to WHO, DF is characterized by febrile episodes (≥40°C for 2–7 days) often associated with rash, nausea, vomiting, and headache. Even though the disease affects all ages of people from infant to adulthood [41], epidemiological data showed that children tend to control this disease better than adults [42]. The severity of the above symptoms and the emergence of other symptoms, such as abdominal pain, mucosal bleeding, and lethargy and restlessness, can be seen after 3–7 days. Laboratory examination of mild dengue fever cases usually reveals elevated leukocyte counts and a small increase in hepatic aminotransferase activity. The emergence of these symptoms is a warning sign of disease progression to severe form (DHF/DSS) if therapeutic action is not undertaken. At this level, clinical intervention and continuous surveillance are necessary to prevent vascular leakage, especially in the endemic region.

Extreme dengue infection can be due to any of the four recognized DENV 1–4 serotypes. The likelihood of developing DHF/DSS is high in patients who have had dengue infection with heterogeneous serotype [43] in the past, with approximately 5–10% of patients developing extreme DHF/DSS that can be fatal unless treated promptly [44].

This type evolves at a late stage of DF, where patients will experience a defervescent process characterized by a sudden drop in body temperature. This phase is also characterized by severe bleeding, especially from the gastrointestinal tract (black, tarry stool) and thrombocytopenia (<50,000/mm³), which may affect up to 50% of DHF cases [45]. Ironically, there was a negative correlation between the frequency of DHF and the number of platelets in the blood. The exact mechanism of this association is yet to be identified. Decreased platelet counts and loss of function contribute to vascular fragility, increasing the risk of hemorrhage and plasma leakage [39]. It has been proposed that DENV replicates rapidly in platelets during the acute phase of infection, as this is very important to the survival and dissemination of the virus [46]. The existence of other signs such as retro-orbital pain, maculopapular rash, petechiae, or nose or gum bleeding may help to make a definitive diagnosis of DF [47]. Subsistence in systolic pressure and hypotension can result in profound shock, known as dengue shock syndrome. Long-term DSS duration can predispose to additional complications such as severe bleeding, diffuse intravascular coagulopathy (DIC), respiratory failure, multiorgan failure, and infrequently encephalopathy leading to death [48, 49]. It was estimated that DHF-related case
fatality could exceed 15% of all cases, but proper medical treatment and symptom-
atic management could minimize the mortality rate to less than 1%.

Signs and symptoms depending on the stage of the disease reflect the dengue fever. People with dengue virus normally become asymptomatic (80%) or have mild symptoms such as uncomplicated fever [50, 51]. 5% of the people have more severe illness and, in a small proportion of cases (<1%), are life-threatening and cause death despite care. The incubation period (time between exposure and onset of symptoms) ranges from 3 to 14 days, but most of the time is 4 to 7 days. Children are more likely to have atypical symptoms, often with common cold or gastroenteritis (vomiting and diarrhea)-like symptoms [52].

The characteristic symptoms of dengue are sudden fever, headache (typically behind the eyes), muscle and joint pain, and rash. The course of infection is divided into three phases: febrile, serious, and recovery. The febrile phase includes high fever, possibly over 40°C (104°F) and is associated with severe pain and headache; this period usually lasts 2–7 days. Vomiting and rash will be there along with flushed skin. In some cases, the illness is progressing to a serious stage as the fever clears. This process is characterized by major, diffuse plasma leakage usually lasting 1–2 days. Organ dysfunction and severe bleeding, usually from the gastrointestinal tract, may also occur [53]. Shock (dengue shock syndrome) and hemorrhage (dengue hemorrhagic fever) occur in less than 5% of all dengue cases. This serious phase is more common among children and young adults. The recovery phase is followed by the resorption of the leaked fluid into the bloodstream over a duration of 2–3 days. The change is often startling and can be followed by serious pruritus and bradycardia. The rash can occur, with either a maculopapular or a vasculitic appearance accompanied by desquamation. A fluid-overloaded condition can occur during this stage, in rare cases.

Dengue also affects a variety of other body systems, either in isolation or along with typical dengue symptoms. Decreased sensitivity occurs in 0.5–6% of severe cases, due to encephalitis or, indirectly, to compromised vital organs (e.g., hepatic encephalopathy). Other neurological disorders similar to dengue, such as transverse myelitis and Guillain-Barré syndrome, have been identified. Myocarditis and acute liver failure are among the most rare complications.

7. Diagnosis

Signs and symptoms of dengue fever are similar to some other illnesses, such as typhoid fever or malaria, which can sometimes hinder the likelihood of a timely and correct diagnosis. It may be diagnosed by the patient’s signs and symptoms, patient’s medical history, and testing blood samples (preliminary by platelet count, followed by ELISA, HI assay, and RT-PCR).

The early and precise diagnosis of dengue infection in the laboratory is of paramount importance for disease control. It was estimated that the number of cases of dengue misdiagnosed could reach a record of 50% of all cases, mainly due to a wide disparity in dengue signs and symptoms that conflict with symptoms of other viral infections, particularly for people living in or traveling to endemic areas of tropical infectious diseases. Until the antiviral vaccine is available, early and accurate diagnosis relies heavily on the prevention of serious cases and the reduction of the disease’s economic burden. To date, two screening methods have been employed for early diagnosis of the disease. The first is a direct approach for the acute dengue disease phase which is focused on an antigen detection of genomic RNA from viremic patient’s blood samples. The second is an indirect approach that relies on serological tests to detect dengue-related immunoglobulins by Mac-ELISA for the capture of real IgM or indirect ELISA for the capture of antiDEN IgGs.
Dengue diagnosis is usually performed clinically on the basis of recorded symptoms and physical examination, especially in endemic areas. However, early dengue fever can be difficult to differentiate from other viral infections. Tourniquet testing, which is particularly useful in environments where laboratory tests are not available, includes applying a blood pressure cuff, inflating it to the midpoint between diastolic and systolic pressure for 5 minutes, and then counting any petechial hemorrhages that occur. The higher number of petechiae makes dengue diagnosis more likely; the lower limit for diagnosis is variably specified as 10–20 petechiae per 2.5 cm² [54].

8. Treatment

There are no particular antiviral medicines for dengue, but it is necessary to maintain a proper fluid balance [55]. Treatment is dependent on the severity of the symptoms. Those who can drink and pass urine have no warning signs can be treated with daily follow-up and oral rehydration therapy at home. Those who have serious health problems, who have warning signs, or who are unable to handle daily follow-up should be admitted to the hospital for treatment. For areas with access to an intensive care unit, treatment should be given for those with extreme dengue fever. Intravenous hydration usually takes 1 or 2 days, if necessary. Fluid administration dose is titrated to 0.5–1 mL/kg per hour of urinary output, stabilizing vital signs, and normalizing hematocrit. The volume of fluid that is provided should be the smallest to achieve such markers. Bearing in mind the risk of infection, invasive medical procedures such as nasogastric intubation, intramuscular injections, and arterial punctures should be avoided. Paracetamol (acetaminophen) is used for fever and nausea, and it is important to avoid nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen and acetylsalicylic acid as they may increase the risk of bleeding. For patients with compromised vital signs faced with declining hematocrit, blood transfusion should begin early, rather than waiting for the concentration of hemoglobin to decline to some predetermined “cause of transfusion” level. It is advised to deliver red blood cells or whole blood; platelets and fresh, frozen plasma are not typically recommended. Intravenous fluids are removed during the recovery phase to avoid fluid overload. When fluid overload occurs and vital signs are stable, stopping the administration of fluid can be all that is required to remove excess fluid. If the individual is outside the critical phase, a diuretic loop, such as furosemide, may be used to remove excess fluid from circulation.

9. Prevention

In December 2015, after decades of research and clinical progress, the first dengue vaccine (CYD-TDV or Dengvaxia®, by Sanofi Pasteur) was authorized [56]. Now regulatory authorities have approved it in ~20 countries. CYD-TDV was found to be effective and safe in clinical trials in people who had past infections with the dengue virus (seropositive individuals). It does, however, bring an increased risk of severe dengue in those who undergo their first normal dengue infection after vaccination (those who were seronegative at vaccination time). It was confirmed in November 2017 by the results of an additional retrospective study analysis which determines the serostatus at the time of vaccination.

Pre-vaccination screening is the recommended strategy for countries which consider vaccination as part of their dengue control program. With this approach only individuals under evidence of past dengue infection would be vaccinated (based on an antibody test or confirmed dengue infection in the past by a verified laboratory).
Decisions on implementing a pre-vaccination screening strategy would require careful country-level evaluation, including consideration of the sensitivity and specificity of the available tests and local priorities, dengue epidemiology, country-specific hospitalization levels, and availability of both CYD-TDV and screening tests [57].

But prevention depends on the monitoring and safety of the bite of the mosquito that transmits it. The primary tool used to monitor *Aedes aegypti* is by destroying its habitats, which include standing water in urban areas (e.g., abandoned tires, ponds, irrigation ditches, and open barrels). If habitat destruction is not possible, the application of insecticides or biological control agents to standing water is another option. Reducing open water collection is the preferred and simplest method of control. Generalized spraying is often done with organophosphate or pyrethroid insecticides but is not considered successful. People can avoid mosquito bites by wearing clothes that completely cover the skin, wearing a repellent scarf, or staying in air-conditioned, screened, or nested areas. However, these approaches do not seem to be sufficiently effective, as the frequency of outbreaks in certain areas appears to be increasing, probably because urbanization is increasing the habitat of *Aedes* mosquitoes; however, the range of diseases appears to be expanding, possibly due to climate change.

10. Conclusion

Dengue fever is a terrible disease and a growing public health problem. A rapid increase in unplanned urbanization leads to more mosquito breeding sites, hence a greater number of people are exposed to *Aedes Aegypti* mosquitoes bite. These include semi-urban and slum areas where household water storage is normal and where solid waste disposal facilities are inadequate. The urgent need for a vaccine to minimize morbidity and mortality due to this disease has been recognized in a cost-effective manner in recent years.

Conflict of interest

The authors have none to declare.

Author details

Ramalingam Kothai* and Balasubramanian Arul
Department of Pharmacology, Vinayaka Mission’s College of Pharmacy, Vinayaka Mission’s Research Foundation (Deemed to be University), Salem, Tamil Nadu, India

*Address all correspondence to: kothaiarul@yahoo.co.in

IntechOpen

© 2020 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited. [CC BY]
References


[8] Teo D, Ng LC, Lam S. Is dengue a threat to the blood supply? Transfusion Medicine [Internet]. 2009;19(2):66-77. DOI: 10.1097/OGX.0b013e3181cb8fbc


Chapter 2
Lessons Learned and Recent Advances in Dengue Research
Juan Samuel Sulca Herencia

Abstract
Dengue is the most important arbovirus, many research have contributed to the diagnosis, management, prevention and control of this disease, which will be described in this chapter, for example: the importance of serotypes and genotypes for the development of the disease, the relationship of the viral load between symptomatic and asymptomatic people, the influence of antibodies on the development of the disease, co-infections with microorganisms and chronic diseases, possible reservoirs, the diagnostic assays, cross-reactions in the diagnosis, the influence of climate change on the disease and the vector, mechanisms of transmission of the disease, new drugs and plant extracts with antiviral activity, the dengue vaccine, the results of immunizations, etc. This information gives a concrete idea of the advances and challenges against this disease.

Keywords: dengue, dengue virus, arbovirus, flavivirus, Flaviviridae

1. Introduction
Dengue is a single systematic and dynamic disease that includes severe and non-severe clinical manifestations [1]. It is caused by any of the four dengue virus serotypes and it is transmitted by *Aedes* mosquito bites, being the main vector *Aedes aegypti* [1]. Dengue can be maintained in an urban cycle which involves humans and it is a serious health problem worldwide [1]. For the past decades, this disease has been spread alarmingly due to different factors like climate change, migration of people, tourism, lack of access to basic services, etc. [1, 2]. Not only does it affect a large portion of the world’s population but also it offers lessons in health sector, research and epidemiology which must be skilled to help in better understanding of the cycle of this disease, set out control strategies and lead the way to future investigations. Thus, in this chapter we are going to discuss some of the main lessons learnt throughout work experiences with this disease and we will learn new strategies designed for studies, assessment and control.

2. Dissemination of the disease in urban areas and transmission mechanisms
Dengue is the most important and common arbovirus in more than 100 countries [1]. This disease is caused by one of the four serotypes of dengue virus (DENV), more than one dengue serotype can be found in many geographical areas (phenomenon called hyperendemicity) [1]. Outbreaks of this disease have been...
Lessons Learned and Recent Advances in Dengue Research

Juan Samuel Sulca Herencia

Abstract

Dengue is the most important arbovirus, many research have contributed to the diagnosis, management, prevention and control of this disease, which will be described in this chapter, for example: the importance of serotypes and genotypes for the development of the disease, the relationship of the viral load between symptomatic and asymptomatic people, the influence of antibodies on the development of the disease, co-infections with microorganisms and chronic diseases, possible reservoirs, the diagnostic assays, cross-reactions in the diagnosis, the influence of climate change on the disease and the vector, mechanisms of transmission of the disease, new drugs and plant extracts with antiviral activity, the dengue vaccine, the results of immunizations, etc. This information gives a concrete idea of the advances and challenges against this disease.

Keywords: dengue, dengue virus, arbovirus, flavivirus, Flaviviridae

1. Introduction

Dengue is a single systematic and dynamic disease that includes severe and non-severe clinical manifestations [1]. It is caused by any of the four dengue virus serotypes and it is transmitted by Aedes mosquito bites, being the main vector Aedes aegypti [1]. Dengue can be maintained in an urban cycle which involves humans and it is a serious health problem worldwide [1]. For the past decades, this disease has been spread alarmingly due to different factors like climate change, migration of people, tourism, lack of access to basic services, etc. [1, 2]. Not only does it affect a large portion of the world’s population but also it offers lessons in health sector, research and epidemiology which must be skilled to help in better understanding of the cycle of this disease, set out control strategies and lead the way to future investigations. Thus, in this chapter we are going to discuss some of the main lessons learnt throughout work experiences with this disease and we will learn new strategies designed for studies, assessment and control.

2. Dissemination of the disease in urban areas and transmission mechanisms

Dengue is the most important and common arbovirus in more than 100 countries [1]. This disease is caused by one of the four serotypes of dengue virus (DENV), more than one dengue serotype can be found in many geographical areas (phenomenon called hyperendemicity) [1]. Outbreaks of this disease have been
reported in America, Africa, Mid-west, Asia and the Pacific islands [2]. Nearly 3 billion people (40% of world population) are at risk in areas where dengue occurs, and about 70% of the population at risk are in South East Asia and Western Pacific region [2]. About 400 million people are infected with dengue annually, of which 100 million people are sick and 22,000 die of severe dengue [3]. A virus, a vector and a sensitive population must be in the same geographic area for a dengue onset outbreak [1]. Travelers contribute to dengue dissemination to non-endemic areas but they may also serve as sentinels for warning dissemination. Some studies indicate that dengue represents about 2% of the diseases from travelers returning to endemic regions [4]. Based on GeoSentinel, a data-collection network between 1997 and 2006, dengue was imported from South-east Asia (51%), South Central Asia (17%), Latin America (15%), the Caribbean (9%), parts of Africa (5%) and Oceania (2%) [4]. The number of febrile travelers returning from the tropics and sub-tropical areas being diagnosed with dengue has increased from 2% in the 1990s to 16% by 2005 [4]. A study of paediatric travelers in 19 countries reported dengue and typhoid fever as the most often febrile diseases in children returning from tropical regions and sub-Saharan Africa [4]. *Aedes aegypti* vector can be disseminated relatively easy in urban areas because of its strong anthropophilic habits, its biological features like egg resistance to desiccation, its permanence within and not away from the urban centers, and the search for water with low load of organic matter for its oviposition making its arrival in rural areas, where the temperature enables its replication, relatively simple; transform cemeteries, tire repair shop, bus terminals, etc. in critical points of infestation where the vector surveillance must be carried out [5]. The virus can reach new areas where cases of symptomatic and asymptomatic persons or cases of people’s incubation period of the disease have not been reported. Around three-quarters of dengue infections presented each year are clinically inapparent, the asymptomatic ones were considered dead-end hosts because they do not produce high enough viremia to infect mosquitoes [6]. Some studies provide evidence that despite a low level of viremia, dengue asymptomatic persons were capable of transmitting the disease to mosquitoes and potentially enabling a high virus transmission. Since it has no symptoms, they could continue in their day-to-day work and be exposed to mosquito bites [6]. The virus can also be spread through infected mosquitoes so that once the mosquito is infected and the extrinsic incubation period is passed, it can be a lifelong carrier of the virus which is about 2 weeks or a month. The interruption of dengue transmission was possible in the 60s and at the beginning of the 70s as a result of an *Aedes aegypti* eradication. The lack of surveillance and vector control followed outbreaks in the Caribbean, Central America and South America [1]. From this experience, it is considered that vector control and epidemiological services detecting and studying dengue cases have to work together and maintain a constant vigilance [1]. The monitoring service should be capable of making the difference between a seasonal and/or temporary increase and increases in the number of cases resulting from a dengue outbreak so that tools of epidemiology as the endemic channel are highly important. If the number of cases reported is higher in two standard deviations above the endemic channel in monthly or weekly notifications, a warning of dengue is produced [1, 7]. However, the lack of notifications continues to be one of the most significant problems in order to prevent and control this disease in many countries as well as in the western Pacific region [1]. The Geographic Information Systems (GIS) allows the analysis of this information on the geographical reference basis in space and time. This type of systems is important for vector-borne disease surveillance and vector control strategy planning [8]. DENV can be transmitted to humans through the bite of female mosquitoes of the *Aedes aegypti*. Other dengue transmission mechanism
is the perinatal transmission and it occurs when a mother is infected near the childbirth so that the infection can be transmitted through microtransfusion when a placental abruption occurs or during delivery when the mother’s blood gets in contact with the newborn’s mucosal. Dengue in pregnancy is related to premature delivery, fetal distress in labour, intrauterine death and miscarriages. DENV can also be transmitted through breast milk or exposure to blood, organs or infected tissues like bone marrow [9]. In a study carried out at the Brazilian blood center from February to June in 2012, donors tested positive for DENV-3 and DENV-4 were found and 42 units of PCR tested positive were transfused in 35 recipients. Of these findings, 16 units testing positive were transfused in 16 sensitive recipients in which 5 possible cases transmitted by transfusion (TT) were found, 1 case was considered as a possible TT, and 10 of them were not transmitted. However, no significant differences were found between symptoms and mortality in cases and controls [10].

3. Dengue virus serotypes and genotypes and its relation to clinical cases

The evolution of molecular biology and phylogenetic analysis has enabled molecular epidemiology studies binding DENV-phylogenetic analysis which was found in different geographic areas within a certain period of time and clinical and epidemiological data in order to establish a relation to genotypes and lineages which are found with other circulating strains as well as to identify the origin and the transmission route, the severity of the disease, etc. There are four related DENV serotypes but antigenically different DENV-1, DENV-2, DENV-3, DENV-4 and each of them generates an immune response to the infection. The nucleotide sequences show 63–68% homology within the DENV group in comparison with 44% between DENV and Yellow Fever virus (YFV), and 51% between DENV and West Nile virus (WNV), and it shares a minor homology at 80% at a level of amino acids [11]. Previous studies based on partial (prM/E), partial or complete E gene; or complete genomic sequences recognized distinct DENV genotypes [12] (Table 1).

The genotypes may present different lineages or clades. The genetic changes in the virus are caused by mutations or the introduction of a new variant from other region, thus genotyping of strain virus is used to identify the epidemic outbreak source and spread [12]. Some dengue genotypes are related to a higher virulence. DENV-2 and DENV-3 Asian genotypes are associated with severe infections [1]. In South East Asia, dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) and/or dengue shock syndrome (DSS) outbreaks are caused by DENV-2 southeast Asian genotype strain, meanwhile epidemics caused by DENV-2 in Latin America presents solely dengue fever (DF) in most cases. The DENV-2 genotypes circulating in the United States seem to be less virulent. Because of the introduction of the South East Asian genotype virulent, the number of cases of DHF and DSS in America has increased [1, 11].

It is thought that an infection with DENV serotype provides lifelong immunity against the same serotype infection and short-term protection against infection by a 2 or 3 month-heterologous serotype [1, 11]. Some studies contradict the hypothesis that has been accepted until now. In 2010–2011 a study in DENV-2 American/Asian genotype outbreak was conducted in Iquitos, Peru. It was carried out 15 years after the first DENV-2 American genotype in that region. The results on the study showed that protection against homologous DENV-2 may be incomplete [13]. In another study carried out in Peru, it was found that the antibodies of a primary infection against DENV-1 neutralized more efficiently in American DENV-2 than in Asian DENV-2. It is believed that this cross-protective immunity is not so strong to inhibit viremia but it may contribute to reduce DENV-2 infection.
Epidemiological surveillance studies are required to human population becoming a public health concern. Thus, phylogenetics and Sarawak [15]. However, there is a possibility that this new serotype may spread to non-human primates (NHP). This new serotype has only been found in the Woods of South East Asia. However, it was shown that this virus was genetically different to Aedes nivalis mosquito cases will circulate between primates and other serotypes. On the basis of this, it was concluded that DENV-5 will be infected patients may influence on the severity of the disease. In a study carried out comparing the clinical data and laboratory features within dengue infections and those with high hematocrit in 40–69% of cases and shock in 10–39% of cases when identifying microorganisms causing the disease. It was found that there were instances of this disease in order to learn differences that lead to the symptomatology [14]. In 2013 evidences of a new dengue serotype appearance (DENV-5) that was identified in serum samples collected in 2007 during an epidemic in Malaysia were documented. Initially, it was thought that DENV-4 cases will circulate between primates and Aedes nivalis mosquitoes in the woods at South East Asia. However, it was shown that this virus was genetically different to DENV-4 from the rainforest and it had certain similarities to DENV-2 when the virus was isolated and after sequencing the whole genome, rhesus macaques were infected with four dengue serotypes. Once recovered from the infection, the monkeys were inoculated with DENV-5 which produced different antibodies. Moreover, it was observed that the infection with DENV-5 virus titer was four times higher than other serotypes. On the basis of this, it was concluded that DENV-5 will be a new serotype. It is thought that this new serotype may mainly circulate in non-human primates (NHP). This new serotype has only been found in the Woods of Sarawak [15]. However, there is a possibility that this new serotype may spread to human population becoming a public health concern. Thus, phylogenetics and epidemiological surveillance studies are required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dengue serotype</th>
<th>Genotype</th>
<th>Geographical distribution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DENV-1</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Southeast Asia, China, The Middle East</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>III (Sylvatic)</td>
<td>Malaysia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Countries of the Pacific Rim, the Western Pacific, islands and Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
<td>The Americas, West Africa and Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DENV-2</td>
<td>Asian I</td>
<td>Thailand, Malaysia, Cambodia, Myanmar, Vietnam and Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Asian II</td>
<td>China, Indonesia, The Philippines, Taiwan, Sri Lanka, India, Honduras and Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Southeast Asian/ American</td>
<td>Southeast Asia, Central and South America and the Caribbean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cosmopolitan</td>
<td>East and West Africa, the Middle East, the Indian subcontinent, Indian and Pacific Ocean Islands, Australia, Mexico</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>American</td>
<td>Central and South America, the Caribbean and the Indian subcontinent and the Pacific Islands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sylvatic</td>
<td>West Africa and Southeast Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DENV-3</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>Southeast Asia, the Philippines and the South Pacific islands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Continental Southeast Asia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>III</td>
<td>Asia, East Africa, the Americas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Puerto Rico and Tahiti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DENV-4</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>The Philippines, Thailand, Vietnam, Myanmar, Malaysia, Sri Lanka, India</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>II</td>
<td>Southeast Asia (Indonesia, Malaysia, Singapore), China, islands of the Western Pacific Ocean, Australia, the Caribbean and the Americas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>III</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Malaysia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Dengue virus serotypes and genotypes and its geographical distribution.

symptomatology [14]. In 2013 evidences of a new dengue serotype appearance (DENV-5) that was identified in serum samples collected in 2007 during an epidemic in Malaysia were documented. Initially, it was thought that DENV-4 cases will circulate between primates and Aedes nivalis mosquitoes in the woods at South East Asia. However, it was shown that this virus was genetically different to DENV-4 from the rainforest and it had certain similarities to DENV-2 when the virus was isolated and after sequencing the whole genome, rhesus macaques were infected with four dengue serotypes. Once recovered from the infection, the monkeys were inoculated with DENV-5 which produced different antibodies. Moreover, it was observed that the infection with DENV-5 virus titer was four times higher than other serotypes. On the basis of this, it was concluded that DENV-5 will be a new serotype. It is thought that this new serotype may mainly circulate in non-human primates (NHP). This new serotype has only been found in the Woods of Sarawak [15]. However, there is a possibility that this new serotype may spread to human population becoming a public health concern. Thus, phylogenetics and epidemiological surveillance studies are required.
4. Factors that increase dengue severity, cases and co-infection classification

Most of dengue infections are subclinical or asymptomatic. Dengue epidemics were presented in Cuba in 1981 and 1987, and most cases of dengue shock and hemorrhagic dengue were mainly found in white population than in afro-descendants [16]. In studies carried out in Brazil and El Salvador, it was found that the African descent was a protective factor in dengue hemorrhagic manifestations [16]. In a dengue outbreak in Santiago de Cuba in 1997, it was found that hemorrhagic dengue cases were reported more frequently in patients aged between 15 and 39 years old. Additionally, they found a history of asthma in a 16.5% of the cases [17]. The WHO estimates that, by 2030, the diabetes mellitus will have been the 7th leading cause of death. A study carried out for evaluating the influence of diabetes mellitus and its relation to clinical manifestations of dengue, indicated higher risks of dengue symptoms potentially fatal within patients developing diabetes mellitus [18]. Other risk factors such as sickle-cell disease, uremia, allergies, hypertension, chronic renal failure may enable disease severity [1]. Regarding age, the lower compensation capacity of capillary plasma extravasation in children increases dengue shock risk. It has been observed that serious dengue cases were continuously presented in primary infections from breastfeeding babies whose mothers were developing immunity to some dengue serotype. The non-neutralizing antibodies produced by cross reaction during a primary infection or passively obtained from a mother to newborns are adhered to epitopes of dengue virus infections facilitating the entry of cells to Fc-receptors. This may contribute to a person’s viral load increase resulting in strong immune response that includes inflammatory mediators [19]. Cytosines may enable plasma extravasation. In secondary infections, memory T-cells caused by previous reactions to dengue activate, replicate, produce cytokines and die of apoptosis. This can be correlated with disease severity [16]. The patient’s background is important when ruling out other causes of this disease, for instance, other flavivirus presence like YFV, Saint Louis encephalitis virus (SLEV), Zika virus (ZIKV), WNV. Alphavirus like Chikungunya (CHIKV), Mayaro virus (MAYV), Venezuelan Equine Encephalitis virus (VEE), Bunyavirus like Oropouche virus (OROV), group C virus, Guaroa virus (GROV), Influenza virus, arenavirus, filovirus as well as other microorganisms can cause the disease with symptoms with similar symptoms such as malaria, Leptospirosis, typhoid fever, rickettsia diseases, etc. [1]. Dengue infections with different serotypes as well as the sequence of these infected patients may influence on the severity of the disease. In a study carried out in Singapore, between 2005 and 2011, febrile adult patients found in DENV-1 cases that were associated with dengue hemorrhagic fever (adjusted RR = 1.74) and severe dengue (adjusted RR = 2.1) were assessed, while DENV-2 had a low risk of dengue hemorrhagic fever (adjusted RR = 0.5) [20]. A special attention should be given to the clinical features of this disease in order to learn differences that lead to the identification of microorganisms causing the disease. It was found that there were no elevated hematocrit or shock cases in CHIKV infection as compared to dengue cases with high hematocrit in 40–69% of cases and shock in 10–39% of cases when comparing the clinical data and laboratory features within dengue infections and chikungunya [21]. The arthralgies were more frequent in CHIKV in 70–100% of cases as compared to at least 10% of dengue cases. The Zika infections may present Oedema in limbs as compared to dengue and chikungunya which is low or nil. The presence of this type of differences does not exclude atypical complications and presentations of the disease, thus the laboratory diagnosis plays a crucial role [22].

DENV, ZIKV and CHIKV are transmitted by Aedes aegypti vector. Therefore, the areas where the disease is spread may be the same leading potentially to
co-infections. Co-infection cases within different dengue serotypes have been reported in various countries like Peru where isolation of DENV-1 and DENV-3 in the department of Madre de Dios was reported [23]. Although this type of findings, the connection between dengue co-infections and severity of the infection needs to be further examined. Reports of DENV and CHIKV co-infections have been exhibited since 1964 in Asia, Africa, the Caribbean, North America, South America. Dengue and malaria co-infections have been reported in various countries such as India, Pakistan, Indonesia, Japan, Malaysia, Brazil and many others; and even co-infections among dengue, malaria and chikungunya have been reported in South Africa and Asia. A systematic review to determine global prevalence and distribution of malaria, dengue and chikungunya co-infections reported evidence of coinfections within these agents in 42 countries. The most prevalent confection was malaria/dengue followed by dengue/chikungunya, Malaria/Chikungunya and Malaria/Dengue/Chikungunya [24]. Clinical presentations between dengue and malaria are alike so it can sometimes cause a co-infection misdiagnosis. Anemia is a major symptom of infections caused by malaria which are not presented in dengue cases but it is often in this type of co-infections. On the other hand, lowering of platelets and hemoglobin content, reduced aspartate aminotransferase levels and elevated alanine aminotransferase levels are also observed [25].

In 1970, dengue disease was classified as non-classical dengue fever, classical dengue fever, dengue hemorrhagic fever and dengue shock syndrome. Sometime after this, various studies reported lack of correlation between classification and disease severity [26]. This classification showed a high specificity in the identification of hemorrhagic dengue; however, its sensitivity was low when detecting severe dengue cases requiring medical care and/or hospitalization. Thus, the WHO proposed a new classification according to the level of clinical severity by dividing dengue disease in two categories, severe dengue and non-severe dengue in 2008 [1]. This classification makes possible to establish the management and improve notifications for a better epidemiological surveillance so that warning signs and early warning of severe cases requiring hospitalization are proposed [1]. Regarding a study conducted to compare both classifications, it was found that the sensitivity of the new classification to detect severe cases was 65%, and the old classification was 30%. The new classification had 72% of sensitivity to detect patients needing advanced medical services and the old classification only had 32%. Further studies alike indicate that the WHO classification in 2009 has brought benefits in epidemiology and clinical use, some others have proposed to include other variables on severe dengue categories in order to increase sensitivity in a case detection that may require advanced medical care [27].

5. Dengue vectors and mechanisms of infection

Dengue virus is mainly transmitted by Aedes aegypti and Aedes albopictus mosquitoes. Aedes aegypti is a tropical mosquito regarded as the most important disease transmission vector in urban areas, there are also other vector viruses like ZIKV and CHIKV. Dengue outbreaks have also been attributed to Aedes albopictus, Aedes polynesiensis and various species of complex Aedes scutellaris [1]. Aedes aegypti is a species with a strong predilection for human blood adapted to urban zones, especially in human dwellings; it is an efficient vector due to certain features like the egg-laying in a wide range of containers, the egg resistance to drying and the capacity of the female mosquito to bite in multiple occasions until they meet their need of blood. Aedes albopictus has adapted to temperate and tropical climates and it is a zoophilic and anthropophilic species and as well as Aedes aegypti, they both feed
during the day [1]. Some laboratory studies have reported that *Aedes albopictus* can become infected and transmit other 22 arboviruses such as CHIKV, Eastern equine encephalitis virus (EEEV), Ross river virus (RRV), Western equine Encephalitis (WEE), YFV among others [28]. The vertical virus transmission (transovarial or transovum) of an infected female mosquito to its eggs and subsequent progeny provides a mechanism as the arbovirus may be maintained in nature during climate conditions such as cold periods in temperate and hot regions, and dry in tropical areas or during the lack of susceptible vertebrate host. Many flaviviruses like YFV, Japanese encephalitis virus (JEV), SLEV, WNV can be transmitted in a vertical manner in its natural vectors [29]. Such natural transmission for DENV has already been approved by *Aedes aegypti* and *Aedes albopictus*; however, it occurs in a smaller proportion in *Aedes aegypti*. Moreover, its potential for transmission and maintenance of disease in nature has not been established yet. The preference of *Aedes aegypti* for little organic matter in water or clean water when it comes to lay eggs provides information about the possible places that these mosquito larvae may be found. However, some studies reported that septic tanks have been identified as places where a high *Aedes aegypti* replication can occur [30]. A study in Brazil assessed rudimentary cesspits as possible *Aedes aegypti* breeding sites identifying immature and adult forms of *Aedes aegypti* in cesspits. The average number of insects found was similar to the one reported in common breeding habitats which confirmed the new place of breeding of this vector [30]. Thus, the identification of new *Aedes aegypti* breeding sites indicates a change in habits or an adaptation of the mosquito in its environment that also need to be considered in vector control strategies of *Aedes aegypti*. Climatic factors play a significant role in its biological cycle and displacement of dengue vector. In a study about the effect of temperature on mosquitoes, it was found that mosquitoes maintained at 20°C were less sensitive to the infection and died in less time which lessened the likelihood of midgut infection without affecting the extrinsic incubation period of DENV as compared to a constant 10°C temperature range [31].

6. Dengue virus jungle cycle and reverse zoonosis

DENV can circulate in jungle cycles where virus can remain in place using non-human primates (NHP) as reservoirs or viruses transmitted in an urban cycle can infect non-human primates (‘spillback’ or ‘reverse zoonosis’) [12]. The urban and jungle cycles are shown to exist in Asia and Africa, in countries such as Malaysia, Senegal, the Philippines where DENV would be identified by a virus isolation from species such as *Presbytis obscura*, *Erythrocebus patas*, and *Macaca fascicularis* respectively [32]. Studies conducted in South East Asia reported antibodies in non-human primates in Indonesia, the Philippines, Cambodia, Vietnam and Malaysia. DENV viral isolation or identification by RT-PCR in NHP has not been reported in Americas but wild caught patas monkeys (*Erythrocebus patas*) and rhesus macaques (*Macaca mulatta*) showing antibodies against DENV by PRNT were reported in a study carried out between 2010 and 2012 in Puerto Rico [32]. As no evidences of DENV jungle cycle in America were shown, it is believed that these results may represent a spillback infection and non-human primates would get the infection of urban cycles presented in the population. In Argentina 2020, antibodies against DENV-1 y DENV-3 in howler monkeys (*Alouatta caraya*) were found; and in Brazil between 2006 and 2014, low antibodies against DENV in free-living golden headed lion tamarins (*Leontopithecus chrysomelas*) were found [32]. These cases were also assumed to result from spillback infection. A study in Thailand in 2008–2009 identified 6 DENV positive-dogs by RT-PCR and/or viral isolation in urban areas,
2 were DENV-2 positive and 4 were DENV-3 positive in a rubber plantation area [33]. It is necessary to continue with this type of studies in these animals in order to develop a viremia high enough to infect mosquitoes. More than 200 viruses from 27 families, including flaviviridae, was isolated or detected in bats and several studies have shown DENV nucleic acids and/or antibodies present in Neotropical wildlife. A study in Costa Rica suggest that bats are infected accidentally by DENV because the RNA quantification in blood was low below the minimum infectious dose of mosquito that is needed to maintain the transmission cycle for the virus. Thus, they were considered as dead-end hosts for dengue virus [34].

7. Problems of dengue diagnosis

A series of multiple variant testing have been carried out for dengue diagnosis depending on a person’s infection phase, these tests are conducted with different immunological targets for virus recognition, a part of its structure or a reaction in an infected person or an animal’s body indicating an exposure to DENV [35] (Table 2).

In a dengue study, diagnostic tests display numerous problems which we will describe briefly. The presence of false positive as a result of contamination and different variants of RT-PCR such as endpoint PCR, nested PCR, real-time PCR as well as the use of different primers and enzymes lead to variations in levels of sensitivity and specificity. Some commercial test enables the identification of different microorganisms by utilizing RT-PCR, PCR tests and the detection of the product in about an hour. The RUO Film Array Global Fever Panel tests are utilized for the detection of 6 bacterias, 4 protozoans and 9 viruses like Chikungunya virus, Crimean-Congo hemorrhagic fever virus, Ebola virus, Lassa virus, Marburg virus, West Nile virus, Yellow fever virus, Zika virus and Dengue virus. Whole blood (EDTA) is used as a sample. The use of automation equipment can help to reduce contamination problems and deliver results in a short time as well as providing diagnosis for 19 pathogens. Regarding to improvements for this type of systems the equipment can only process one sample at a time, and the study is expensive. The rapid tests do not need sophisticated equipment or qualified staff, it is feasible in situ and they are inexpensive. Nonetheless, its sensitivity and specificity are not as higher as other techniques. Cell cultures are often used for dengue virus isolation. Many cell lines are used for virus isolation; however, their sensitivity can vary depending on the type of cell line, the clone, the system used for viral isolation and the sample type used for isolation [35, 36]. In order to isolate DENV, it is preferable to use C6/36 cell line obtained from Aedes albopictus mosquito salivary glands that is replicated at 28°C as

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnostic test</th>
<th>Immunological target</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polymerase chain reaction (PCR)</td>
<td>RNA detection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid tests</td>
<td>NSI, IgM, IgG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virus isolation</td>
<td>Virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunofluorescence (IF)</td>
<td>Virus, IgM, IgG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plaque assay (PA) and fluorescent focus assay (FFA)</td>
<td>Virus (titer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISAS)</td>
<td>NSI, IgM, IgG, IgA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neutralization tests</td>
<td>Neutralizing antibodies (IgG)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. 
Most commonly used diagnostic tests for diagnosing dengue.
it has higher sensitivity than Vero or BHK-21 (mammalian lines). Some researchers suggest using a variety of C6/36 HT which grows at 33°C. Such cell is considered to be more sensitive than the traditional C6/36, and it is recommended to use the shell vial or shell vial modified method instead of the traditional or standard isolated system in order to achieve better results. In the modified shell vial method, the cell culture is infected, centrifuged and incubated for 10–15 days, then positive cultures by indirect immunofluorescence are identified [35, 36]. Many laboratories do two or three passages from cell cultures following an assessment of virus presence conducted by IFI. This increases the number of isolations but the cost of the testing goes up and the time needed to obtain the results raises. The quantification or viral load may be run by real time PCR utilizing a standard reference that in comparison with the sample allow us to assess the number of genetic material copies from the sample [35, 36]. When it is intended to quantify infecting viruses in biological samples for producing antigens or vaccines, is preferred to use PA in Vero or BHK-21 cells [35, 36]. One alternative for viral titration, depending on the study performed and especially when evaluating viral load in mosquitoes, is the use of FFA that is a mixture of plaque assay and immunofluorescence test and it allows the use of C6/36 cells containing higher sensitivity than the above-mentioned cells [35, 36]. IF and ELISAS tests are relatively low cost and they may occur commercially or may be designed. Many of their components as antibodies and antigens can be produced in the laboratory at lower costs but it is necessary a good quality control of production so that there can be variations in job titles of lots that may affect test results [35, 36]. Neutralization tests can be performed under different techniques such as PRNT, microneutralization, microneutralization-ELISA. These tests facilitate the high specificity type IgG neutralizing antibodies detection. However, the levels of sensitivity in relation to the cell line, the strain of virus and the technique used are due to cell cultures. Other problems have yet been overcome are DENV cross-reactions with other flavivirus and within the same serotypes in serological tests like ELISAS, IFI and even considered to be gold standard like neutralization test by plaque reduction (PRNT) exhibiting cross-reactions. Cross-reactivity between serotypes is frequent and it occurs particularly in epitope on NS protein for the conservation or in conserved epitopes on E glycoprotein and may vary according to homology between every DENV serotype and genotype. The use of specific monoclonal antibodies for every dengue serotype in the IFI tests improve greatly the specificity of the test as compared to the use of HMAF. The use of tests allows to detect multiple pathogens at the same time like CDC DENV-1-4 rRT-PCR multiplex detecting infecting dengue virus serotype and it was approved by FDA in 2013 [35, 37]. The CDC Trioplex rRT-PCR assay uses real-time (TaqMan®) RT-PCR assays for detection and differentiation of RNA from DENV, CHIKV and ZIKV in serum samples, whole blood (EDTA), cerebrospinal fluid. This also enables the RNA detection of ZIKV in urine and amniotic fluids. FDA has authorized the use of this test under an Emergency Use Authorization (EUA) [38].

8. Animal models for dengue

It is not yet found a suitable animal model expressing all characteristics for dengue disease [39]. Among the most common models used for research are mice showing drawbacks with low-level virus replication of clinical samples, and non-human primates showing a problem for not expressing the clinical disease in the same manner as humans [39]. The use of nursing mice used in intracranial inoculations with high viral load inducing neurological diseases and paralysis are still been used; however, its use continues more for the production of biological
supplies. DENV can slightly replicate in mice A/J, BALB/c and C57BL/6. Mice A/J and BALB/c can die of paralysis [39, 40]. For animal studies, it is considered that an infection with DENV \(10^4-10^6\) PFU (plaque-forming units) concentrations imitate inoculum concentrations of a mosquito bite [39]. The mouse model is generally used initially to assess vaccines being the most suitable the immunocompetent mice but when it exhibits low viremia may result in the underestimation of the results. The use of nursing mice is a good way to assess possible candidate vaccines inducing neurovirulence. Although the NHP do not develop the disease, the antibody seroconversion produced is human-like [39, 40].

9. Antivirals for treating dengue

At the moment, there is no antiviral therapy for DENV treatment. It is believed that the compounds working as inhibitors of RNA-dependent RNA polymerase have shown low efficiency. Moreover, there is a possibility that viral epitopes of DENV may trigger an immune cell response, preceded by development of severe disease. Thus, these epitopes are examined as targets for antiviral productions and they are known as DENV entry inhibitors and can be used in combination with inhibitors of the virus replication in order to increase efficiency.

Inhibition of DENV attachment and entry into the host cell can inhibit immune activation.

Various compounds as peptide entry inhibitors, DN59 and 10ANI may inhibit the antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) in vitro. The doxorubicin antibiotic SA-17 is structured similarly to tetracycline and it has an antiviral activity against DENV serotype 1, 2 and 3 in Vero and C6/36 cells interfering with viral entry by binding to the hydrophobic pocket of the E-protein without exhibiting virucidal activity. The glycosidase inhibitors are unpopular due to its toxicity and low specificity but may help understand E-protein glycosylation processes. The binding agents to carbohydrates occur only during the stage of virus adsorption to the host cell. Concanavalin and agglutinins of wheat germ can bind N-acetylglucosamine residues and the percentage of DENV-lytic plaques in BHK cells can be reduced. Plant lectins such as Hippeastrum hybrid, Galanthus nivalis, and Urtica dioica inhibit DENV-2 infection in Raji/DC-SIGN cells. The compounds of heparan sulfate are potential recipients for DENV. Dengue E protein domain III is responsible for the interaction of heparan sulfate, and it is believed to be in all DENV serotypes and to have epitopes that are recognized by neutralizing antibodies. The suramin is similar to heparan sulfate and persulfated glycosaminoglycan, they bind to a polyanion-binding site of DENV E protein by inhibiting infection. The sulfated polysaccharides extracted from red algae, carrageenans and DL-galactan presented antiviral activity against 4 serotypes of dengue; however, the antiviral activity of DENV-4 DENV-1 weakened in Vero cells and in human Hepatocytes [41, 42].

10. Dengue vaccine

In May 2019, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved the use of Dengvaxia\textsuperscript{®}, a vaccine against DENV that may be used in people aged from 9 to 45 years old [43]. This vaccine utilizes a live attenuated chimeric yellow fever/dengue virus based on a Yellow fever 17D vaccine virus backbone chimerized with prM and E proteins from DENV1–4 replacing the YF prM and E, and 3 doses are administered every 6 months. In phase III trials the overall protective efficacy was 56.7% and 60.8% in South East Asia and Latin America countries, respectively. In 2017, the
vaccine manufacturer, Sanofi Pasteur, announced that some people getting the vaccine without having been previously infected by DENV may be at risk for developing severe dengue if the disease is acquired after immunization [43]. The vaccine candidates utilize strategies such as vaccines of Live-attenuated virus, Inactivated virus, Recombinant protein, DNA vaccine, Viral vector vaccine, Virus like particles and others. Two vaccine candidates (DENVax and TV003/TV005) are being tested in efficacy trials in both Asia and Latin America. DENVax is a tetravalent recombinant live-attenuated dengue vaccine licensed to Takeda. The live virus vaccine utilizes chimerization with DENV-2 PDK-53 as the backbone with DENV-2/-1, -2/-3, and -2/-4 chimeras are created by replacing the DENV-2 prM and E genes with the respective genes from the other DENV serotypes. Other vaccine candidate is TV003/TV00 with a whole attenuated virus for three of four serotypes (attenuated by deletion of 30 nucleotides from 3' UTR of DENV-1, DENV-3, DENV-4, and a chimeric DENV-2/DENV-4) [44]. In spite of having already a vaccine available to prevent dengue, there is a need to further research in order to improve the vaccine for dengue or to produce a new vaccine which enables improvements in certain aspects, for example, a single dose that may immunize for extended periods of time even lifelong, the vaccine effectiveness no longer relying on previous exposure to flavivirus or DENV, the age of group to provide protection being the broadest possible including children under 9 years old, and its administration decreasing the chances of getting the most aggressive dengue disease at no point post vaccination.

11. Conclusions

Dengue is still a major public health concern worldwide. Several natural and social factors have contributed to the number of cases increased in recent decades. The efforts attained in the search of new antivirals and vaccines, and prevention and control strategies for this disease have not proved sufficient. However, the science and knowledge development acquired up to now provide us the tools we need to, and mark the way to follow, in order to achieve a control of this disease.

Conflict of interest

The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Disclaimer

The views expressed in this chapter are those of the author and do not necessarily reflect the official policy or position of the Department of the Navy, Department of Defense, nor the U.S. Government.

Copyright statement

The author of this manuscript is an employee of the U.S. Government. This work was prepared as part of their official duties. Title 17 U.S.C. § 105 provides that ‘Copyright protection under this title is not available for any work of the United States Government.’ Title 17 U.S.C. § 101 defines a U.S. Government work as a work prepared by a military service member or employee of the U.S. Government as part of that person’s official duties.
Lessons Learned and Recent Advances in Dengue Research

DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.92076


References


cesspits as breeding sites for Aedes aegypti in urban areas of Northern Brazil. Revista Pan-Amazônica de Saúde. 2015;6(3):73-80


[36] Instituto de Medicina Tropical Pedro Kourí. Técnicas de laboratorio para el diagnóstico y la caracterización del virus dengue. La Habana: Instituto de Medicina Tropical Pedro Kourí; 2013. p. 128

[37] Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Ensayo de RT-PCR en tiempo real para DENV-1-4 de los CDC. Puerto Rico: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 2013. p. 56


Chapter 3

Situation of Dengue after the Phenomenon of the Coastal El Niño

Cristian Díaz-Vélez, Jorge Luis Fernández-Mogollón, John Alexis Cabrera-Enríquez, Stalin Tello-Vera, Oscar Medrano-Velásquez and Elmer Córdova-Calle

Abstract

Coastal El Niño is a weather phenomenon that is caused by abnormal warming (above 0.4°C) of the Pacific Ocean waters near the coasts of Ecuador and Peru, and it can even reach the central and southern Peruvian coast. As a result of the climatic phenomenon, the Aedes aegypti vector (which in turn is a vector of chikungunya and Zika fever) had been quickly installed in 448 districts of Peru, and emergency was declared in 10 regions, which reported 231,874 victims; 1,129,013 affected and 143 dead. It is necessary to know this, because the direct impact of the weather phenomena contributes to the dengue vector conditioning, facilitating its dissemination with ease. The geographical and climatic conditions of the cities most affected by the El Niño Costero phenomenon turned them into zones of epidemics; in these places, there is an important population growth, from urbanization to sectorization in young towns and urban slums, where in many there is no basic infrastructure and water supply is insufficient, which requires temporary water storage, as well as high temperatures, migratory movement, and beaches with influx of people, which make not only dengue proliferate but also other arbovirosis such as chikungunya.

Keywords: dengue, natural phenomenon, natural disaster, public health

1. Epidemiology of dengue and the coastal El Niño phenomenon in Peru and Ecuador

1.1 Epidemiological data

Coastal El Niño is a weather phenomenon that is caused by abnormal warming (above 0.4°C) of the Pacific Ocean waters near the coasts of Ecuador and Peru, and it can even reach the central and southern Peruvian coasts. As a result, it produces intense rains that, in turn, cause overflow of streams, floods, and allow the accumulation of stagnant waters, which forms the ideal scenario for the appearance of outbreaks of vector-borne diseases such as dengue (DENV), other arbovirosis, and zoonotics such as leptospirosis [1–4]. This phenomenon was presented more clearly in the summer of 2017; however, rains and floods have been reported for Peru even since December 2016 [5].
Chapter 3

Situation of Dengue after the Phenomenon of the Coastal El Niño

Cristian Díaz-Vélez, Jorge Luis Fernández-Mogollón, John Alexis Cabrera-Enríquez, Stalin Tello-Vera, Oscar Medrano-Velásquez and Elmer Córdova-Calle

Abstract

Coastal El Niño is a weather phenomenon that is caused by abnormal warming (above 0.4°C) of the Pacific Ocean waters near the coasts of Ecuador and Peru, and it can even reach the central and southern Peruvian coast. As a result of the climatic phenomenon, the Aedes aegypti vector (which in turn is a vector of chikungunya and Zika fever) had been quickly installed in 448 districts of Peru, and emergency was declared in 10 regions, which reported 231,874 victims; 1,129,013 affected and 143 dead. It is necessary to know this, because the direct impact of the weather phenomena contributes to the dengue vector conditioning, facilitating its dissemination with ease. The geographical and climatic conditions of the cities most affected by the El Niño Costero phenomenon turned them into zones of epidemics; in these places, there is an important population growth, from urbanization to sectorization in young towns and urban slums, where in many there is no basic infrastructure and water supply is insufficient, which requires temporary water storage, as well as high temperatures, migratory movement, and beaches with influx of people, which make not only dengue proliferate but also other arbovirosis such as chikungunya.

Keywords: dengue, natural phenomenon, natural disaster, public health

1. Epidemiology of dengue and the coastal El Niño phenomenon in Peru and Ecuador

1.1 Epidemiological data

Coastal El Niño is a weather phenomenon that is caused by abnormal warming (above 0.4°C) of the Pacific Ocean waters near the coasts of Ecuador and Peru, and it can even reach the central and southern Peruvian coasts. As a result, it produces intense rains that, in turn, cause overflow of streams, floods, and allow the accumulation of stagnant waters, which forms the ideal scenario for the appearance of outbreaks of vector-borne diseases such as dengue (DENV), other arbovirosis, and zoonotics such as leptospirosis [1–4]. This phenomenon was presented more clearly in the summer of 2017; however, rains and floods have been reported for Peru even since December 2016 [5].
As a result of the climatic phenomenon, the *Aedes aegypti* vector (which in turn is a vector of chikungunya and Zika [ZIKV] fever) had been quickly installed in 448 districts of Peru, where more than 14 million people live, by July 2017 [6]. Thus, the Peruvian State in June 2017, declared emergency in 10 regions, which reported 231,874 victims; 1,129,013 affected and 143 dead. It is necessary to know this, because the direct impact of the weather phenomena contributes to the dengue vector conditioning, facilitating its dissemination with ease. Thus, the Peruvian Ministry of Health reported that at the end of 2017, the epidemiological surveillance system reported 76,093 cases of dengue (among probable and confirmed), marking an increase of up to three times more cases compared to 2016 (25,236 cases) (Figure 1) [7].

Among the most frequently reported forms were dengue without warning signs (88.6%), dengue with warning signs (11%), and severe dengue (0.3%). The cumulative national incidence for 2017 was 239.1 cases per 100,000 inhabitants and there were 93 deaths, of which 79 were confirmed cases and 14 were probable [8].

There was a marked increase in cases, in those places where there was a greater presence of rain and floods. Thus, for example, Piura concentrated 64% of dengue cases: this place being one of the most affected cities and even presented an overflow from its main river that crosses through the same city, the river Piura [9].

Do not forget that northern Peru is an endemic area due to climate, geography, and other factors that make it a vector-friendly ecosystem, being considered one of the countries with the greatest impact due to climate change [10].

### 1.2 Dengue and climate

Dengue transmission occurs through an insect vector, predominantly *Aedes aegypti* but also *Aedes albopictus*. Environmental parameters, especially temperature and precipitation, affect the demography and behavior of these vectors, making dengue an obvious candidate to investigate the impact of climate on the disease. The incidence of dengue is very seasonal; this seasonality is the footprint of local meteorological variables, which also vary seasonally, and their impact on the demographics of mosquito vectors and transmission dynamics [11].

![Figure 1](https://example.com/dengue_cases.png)

**Figure 1.**

*Number of dengue cases, according to epidemiological weeks. Peru, 2013–2017. Taken from: Ministry of Health of Peru MINSA [12].*
The geographical and climatic conditions of the cities most affected by the El Niño Costero phenomenon turned them into zones of epidemics; in these places, there is an important population growth, from urbanization to sectorization in young towns, urban slums, where in many there is no basic infrastructure and water supply is insufficient, which requires temporary water storage, as well as high temperatures, migratory movement, and beaches with influx of people, which make not only dengue proliferate but also other arbovirosis such as chikungunya [13].

1.3 Epidemiology of other metaxenic diseases

The propagation of the vector for decades is conditioned by the climatic changes. For example, in May 2004, heat waves and droughts were observed in the coastal areas of Kenya, toward Lamu and Mombasa, two large coastal cities. That period was also the beginning of a large chikungunya outbreak in these two cities (with reported attack rates of 75%) before its spread to the Indian Ocean [14]. Entomologists have explained how and why droughts can be associated with increases in diseases transmitted by Aedes, such as chikungunya, dengue, Zika, and yellow fever [15, 16]. During droughts, due to water scarcity, people store a greater amount of water outside or inside the home for longer periods of time, providing shelters to mosquito eggs and larvae [13].

In Peru, the consequence of this weather phenomenon allowed the dissemination of the Aedes vector and consequently led to the increase in cases of emerging diseases, such as Zika and chikungunya (Figure 2). Thus, from 2016 to 2018, 1113 gestating women entered the surveillance system for Zika, of which 61% were notified in 2017. Of the total number of pregnant women notified, 31% had laboratory confirmation for Zika virus through molecular tests like polymerase chain reaction-reverse transcription (RT-PCR) [7].

1.4 Dengue and coinfections

The fluvial precipitations that the phenomenon of the coastal El Niño brought with it during 2017 triggered the collapse of the sewerage system, generating floods and the exposure of wastewater, which together with the rains gave an adequate

---

**Figure 2.**
Distribution of indigenous cases of Zika by onset of symptoms, Peru 2016–2017. Taken from: Ministry of Health of Peru MINSA [17].
environment for the transmission of leptospirosis in urban areas of the Lambayeque region. It was even possible to demonstrate that during this period, laboratory findings compatible with dengue and leptospirosis were reported simultaneously. While it is true that many of the immunoglobulin can remain for years in the patient and do not necessarily require an acute infection, the similarity of clinical symptoms between dengue and leptospirosis makes both pathologies confusing to health personnel, even more so during the appearance of a weather phenomenon where there is an outbreak [18].

1.5 Dengue and seasonality

Dengue in Ecuador fluctuates with a very similar seasonality. The season is an important determinant of infectious disease rates, including mosquito-propagated arboviruses, such as dengue, chikungunya, and Zika. Seasonal disease patterns are driven by a combination of climatic or environmental factors, such as temperature or rainfall, and trends in human behavior time, such as school year schedules, vacations, and weekend patterns. These factors affect both disease rates and medical care-seeking behavior. The seasonality of dengue fever has been studied in the context of climatic factors. Thus, between 2009 and 2016, a predictive model of dengue detection was studied using data from the same patients in rural areas in Ecuador. Thus, compared to the average of every day, cases were more likely to be diagnosed on Tuesdays (relative risk [RR]: 1.26; 95% confidence interval [CI]: 1.05–1.51) and Thursdays (RR: 1.25; 95% CI: 1.02–1.53), and were less likely to be diagnosed on Saturdays (RR: 0.81; 95% CI: 0.65–1.01) and Sundays (RR: 0.74; 95% CI: 0.58–0.95). The holidays were not significant predictors of dengue diagnoses, except for an increase in diagnoses the day after Christmas (RR: 2.77; 95% CI: 1.46–5.24) [19].

From the political sphere, the coastal El Niño phenomenon caused the Ministry of Health and the Ministry of Defense of Ecuador to take into account the declaration of emergency for the Peruvian city of Piura, issued by the Ministry of Health of that country. This is because that city is close to the border of Ecuador, and the trade between the two countries is very high, which makes it necessary to work in a multisectoral way to eradicate the vector [20].

1.6 Impact on the epidemiological surveillance system

It is very necessary to maintain entomological surveillance, especially in those cities where the phenomenon left vector presence. Migration and population increase, in addition to raising awareness and educating the population about the risk factors of dengue occurrence, should always be taken into account to avoid a disease that was installed in the Americas decades ago, precisely because of migration from other areas. The consequences of climate change must be learned as it not only destroys our habitat but directly interferes with our health [21]. Health authorities have the responsibility to plan strategies and evaluate their impact progressively. Many times it is not enough to plan, but to change strategies to avoid having the same results.

2. Clinical behavior of dengue

2.1 Definitions

Classically, the disease presents with an incubation period of 3–14 days; after that a febrile phase (1–4 days); viremia, the critical phase from 4 to 7 days; and a
recovery phase from day 7 onward [22]. This disease course depends on the virus serotype and whether or not the individual has previously had a dengue infection. In this spectrum of disease, one can have:

- Dengue without warning signs: Person with a fever of 7 or less days, with at least two of the following symptoms such as eye pain, myalgia, headache, arthralgia, low back pain, rash, and nausea [23, 24].

- Dengue with warning signs: Person with a probable case of dengue with one or more of the clinical signs such as severe abdominal pain, dyspnea, serous effusion, persistent vomiting, hypothermia, mucosal bleeding, altered mental status, increased hematocrit, and hepatomegaly [23, 24].

- Severe dengue: A probable case with or without warning signs presenting one of the following signs such as signs of hypovolemic shock, severe bleeding, respiratory distress syndrome due to plasma extravasation, and severe organ involvement (encephalitis, hepatitis, and myocarditis) [25].

### 2.2 Signs and symptoms

It is known that the cross-immunity of dengue serotypes is limited, which increases the possibility of reinfections and with them more florid clinical pictures [25, 26]. Previous studies observed the outbreaks from 2010 onward, observing that dengue cases occurred in a greater proportion due to DENV-2, the most frequent clinical symptom being retro-ocular pain, myalgias associated with a 7-day fever [27]. Also, it was observed that in dengue cases, many of them were reinfections and DENV-2 continued to prevail, which was one of the worst at presenting cross-immunity (Figure 3).

A study conducted in the north coast of Peru found that, among the referred symptoms, 82% reported fever, being less than half quantified (values from 37 to 41°C), followed by headache (75.6%), arthralgias (69.7%), myalgias (62.4%), retroocular pain (55.5%), lumbar pain (44.7%), and only 24.4% presenting rash. The presence of platelet decrease (78.4%) was the most frequent among cases with alarm signs [28] (Figure 4).

---

**Figure 3.** Age distribution of DENV-neutralizing antibodies in 2010. Samples were collected between March and June 2010, approximately 6 months prior to a large dengue epidemic largely caused by American/Asian genotype DENV-2. Panel A: Age distribution of serotype-specific DENV-neutralizing antibodies. Panel B: Age distribution of number of prior DENV infections. Naïve indicates absence of detectable DENV-neutralizing antibodies against any serotype, monotypic indicates DENV-neutralizing antibodies against one serotype, and multitypic indicates DENV-neutralizing antibodies against two or more serotypes. Taken from: Forshey et al. [29].
In recent years, new viruses such as chikungunya (CHIKV) and Zika (ZIKV) have also been introduced. In recent years after the ZIKV epidemic, cases of ZIKV infection have continued to be observed, and in children, according to Salgado et al. [30], there were found patients with encephalitis with coinfection of DENV and ZIKV.

Another study, also conducted in Peru, showed that the circulating serotypes during the coastal El Niño phenomenon were DENV-2 and DENV-3, as well as confirmed cases of CHIKV and ZIKV, even in high Andean areas; concomitantly, the study revealed that the main symptoms of dengue were headaches, arthralgias, and back pain associated with fever (Table 1) [27].

Taken from: Forshey et al. [29].

In Peru, there could be a subdiagnosis or overdiagnosis of dengue and therefore of the clinical variability, on the one hand; the amount of arbovirosis that can give a similar clinical presentation is wide, and within these viruses is oropuche, which can be confused with dengue during the endemic months [31]. The contrary occurs in patients with a second dengue virus infection in which the diagnostic methods have a lower sensitivity of 60%, as is the case of non-structural (NS1), a test widely used in our environment [26].

The Huánuco region, located in the center of Peru, was one of the cities that presented an increase in dengue cases, where about 90% of patients presented with myalgia, headache, and rash; being in these patients a diagnostic confirmation of 92% by PCR. This being an area with low endemicity, but as a result of coastal El Niño, it could mean a majority of primary infection, and therefore this high rate of clinical diagnostic correlation [26]. In addition, it is important to know the behavior in children under 5 years of age, in which many of them have antigens from mothers in endemic areas, which leads to more severe manifestations being possible in this particular age group [32].

Finally, it can be observed that, in the years before the dengue virus infection, the agent (DENV-2) and the clinical manifestations were similar, with the difference in the number of cases and the increase in coinfections of the new circulating
In recent years, new viruses such as chikungunya (CHIKV) and Zika (ZIKV) have also been introduced. In recent years after the ZIKV epidemic, cases of ZIKV infection have continued to be observed, and in children, according to Salgado et al. [30], there were found patients with encephalitis with coinfection of DENV and ZIKV. Another study, also conducted in Peru, showed that the circulating serotypes during the coastal El Niño phenomenon were DENV-2 and DENV-3, as well as confirmed cases of CHIKV and ZIKV, even in high Andean areas; concomitantly, the study revealed that the main symptoms of dengue were headaches, arthralgias, and back pain associated with fever (Table 1) [27].

Taken from: Forshey et al. [29].

In Peru, there could be a subdiagnosis or overdiagnosis of dengue and therefore of the clinical variability, on the one hand; the amount of arbovirosis that can give a similar clinical presentation is wide, and within these viruses is oropuche, which can be confused with dengue during the endemic months [31]. The contrary occurs in patients with a second dengue virus infection in which the diagnostic methods have a lower sensitivity of 60%, as is the case of non-structural (NS1), a test widely used in our environment [26].

The Huánuco region, located in the center of Peru, was one of the cities that presented an increase in dengue cases, where about 90% of patients presented with myalgia, headache, and rash; being in these patients a diagnostic confirmation of 92% by PCR. This being an area with low endemicity, but as a result of coastal El Niño, it could mean a majority of primary infection, and therefore this high rate of clinical diagnostic correlation [26]. In addition, it is important to know the behavior in children under 5 years of age, in which many of them have antigens from mothers in endemic areas, which leads to more severe manifestations being possible in this particular age group [32].

Finally, it can be observed that, in the years before the dengue virus infection, the agent (DENV-2) and the clinical manifestations were similar, with the difference in the number of cases and the increase in coinfections of the new circulating viruses; this should make the health staff reflect on making proper use of diagnostic tests to provide better care and avoid fatal outcomes, as it was in some cases discussed above in the last phenomenon of the coastal El Niño (Table 2).

### Table 1.
Clinical symptoms in patients with positive samples for DENV, ZIKV, and CHIKV.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical symptoms</th>
<th>Total n = 496 (%)</th>
<th>PCR real-time confirmed cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>DENV (n = 170)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>n (%)</td>
<td>n (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chills</td>
<td>3 (0.6)</td>
<td>1 (0.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headache</td>
<td>444 (89.5)</td>
<td>152 (89.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dizziness</td>
<td>1 (0.2)</td>
<td>0 (0.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cough</td>
<td>1 (0.2)</td>
<td>1 (0.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sore throat</td>
<td>184 (37.1)</td>
<td>50 (29.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nausea and/or vomits</td>
<td>251 (50.6)</td>
<td>86 (50.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of appetite</td>
<td>312 (62.9)</td>
<td>104 (61.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back pain</td>
<td>270 (54.4)</td>
<td>105 (61.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysuria</td>
<td>1 (0.2)</td>
<td>0 (0.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myalgia</td>
<td>419 (84.5)</td>
<td>147 (86.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arthralgia</td>
<td>396 (79.8)</td>
<td>143 (84.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retro-ocular pain</td>
<td>337 (67.9)</td>
<td>118 (69.4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rash</td>
<td>89 (17.9)</td>
<td>26 (15.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melena</td>
<td>2 (0.4)</td>
<td>0 (0.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal bleeding</td>
<td>9 (1.8)</td>
<td>3 (1.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gums bleeding</td>
<td>3 (0.6)</td>
<td>2 (1.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petechiae</td>
<td>11 (2.2)</td>
<td>3 (1.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecchymosis</td>
<td>2 (0.4)</td>
<td>1 (0.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood-tinged sputum</td>
<td>1 (0.2)</td>
<td>0 (0.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal pain</td>
<td>22 (4.4)</td>
<td>7 (4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoracic pain</td>
<td>5 (1.0)</td>
<td>2 (1.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fatigue</td>
<td>3 (0.6)</td>
<td>0 (0.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altered mental status</td>
<td>1 (0.2)</td>
<td>1 (0.6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Laboratory in the diagnosis of dengue

Today, there are guidelines established by international organizations for the rational use of dengue diagnostic tests. The World Health Organization (WHO) recommends the use of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for the early detection of dengue and its complementation with other tests such as immunoglobulin M (IgM), immunoglobulin G (IgG), and NS1 [33]; however, the use according to the clinical picture and the time of the disease will favor the optimal use of the different tests.

The sensitivity and specificity of the NS1 antigen test can range from 49 to 59% and from 93 to 99%, respectively, while that of the IgM antibody test is from 71 to
Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Crude analysis</th>
<th>Risks for dengue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chikungunya</td>
<td>Dengue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhea, n (%)</td>
<td>3/37 (8)</td>
<td>13/57 (23)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascites, n (%)</td>
<td>0/37 (0)</td>
<td>1/57 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleural effusion, n (%)</td>
<td>0/37 (0)</td>
<td>2/56 (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemoglobin (mg/dl) median (interquartile range (IQR)) [n]</td>
<td>10.5 (10–12) [35]</td>
<td>10.5 (10–12) [36]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease for age, n (%)</td>
<td>26/36 (72)</td>
<td>25/53 (47)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increase for age, n (%)</td>
<td>0/36 (0)</td>
<td>1/53 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematocrit (%) median (IQR) [n]</td>
<td>30.9 (29–34) [33]</td>
<td>31.5 (30–35) [37]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease for age, n (%)</td>
<td>24/33 (73)</td>
<td>30/52 (58)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increase for age, n (%)</td>
<td>0/33 (0)</td>
<td>1/52 (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White blood cells (1000 cells/ml) Median (IQR) [n]</td>
<td>6.4 (5–10) [33]</td>
<td>7.4 (5–12) [36]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease for age, n (%)</td>
<td>17/33 (52)</td>
<td>16/53 (30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increase for age, n (%)</td>
<td>4/33 (12)</td>
<td>5/53 (9)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: N.E.: Not estimable. Taken from: Paternina-Caicedo et al. [32].

*Adjusted by age, days with symptoms, and sex.
**Fisher's exact test.
***Best fit was the natural logarithm of the exposure variable.

Table 2. Clinical and laboratory characteristics of chikungunya and dengue and their relative adjusted risks among children <24 months of age in Colombia.

80% and 46 to 90%, respectively, considering a median of 5 days of fever before the collection of the samples (interquartile range of 3–7 days) for the two tests mentioned. The diagnostic accuracy for the detection of IgM increases for late acute infection (5 days after the onset of symptoms) compared to the early one. The NS1 antigen is an early marker of acute infection, and its combined use with IgM detection can provide a definitive diagnosis of 96.9–100% for samples obtained after 3 days of illness [33]. The reported sensitivity and specificity of IgG for dengue are 92.0 and 100%, respectively [34].

The patient usually has an incubation period of 4–5 days after the bite by mosquitoes of the *Aedes* genus, then presents a clinical picture with variable signs and symptoms for a period of 4–5 days, a period in which he presents the virus of the dengue circulating in the bloodstream and can transmit the disease to other patients through new bites by the aforementioned vector, so techniques based on virus isolation, through cultures, or the detection of genomic material, such as PCR, require samples taken during this time. The end of the patient’s clinical picture is usually manifested by a generalized maculopapular rash, which indicates recovery and can guide the use of serological tests, such as the detection of IgM and IgG antibodies, since the viral load values in the patient have disappeared or significantly reduced, which would make the use of molecular tests or culture inefficient. Leukopenia can be found at this stage with normal platelet and transaminase counts [3].

---

**Table 2.** Clinical and laboratory characteristics of chikungunya and dengue and their relative adjusted risks among children <24 months of age in Colombia.
We can summarize the diagnostic tests used for dengue in four groups: (i) virus isolation and characterization, (ii) detection of the genomic sequence through a nucleic acid amplification test, (iii) detection of specific antibodies against the virus, and (iv) identification of dengue virus (glycoprotein) antigens. Isolation of the virus is achieved by cell culture that gives the most specific result, and the sera are usually collected in the first 3–5 days after the fever starts. Virus isolation is highly dependent on viral load, which limits the period during which the virus can be successfully isolated in the patient's serum. In addition, its high cost makes this test little accessible to most laboratories [3]. Viral identification can also be done using dengue-specific monoclonal antibodies by immunofluorescence and reverse transcription-PCR (RT-PCR) [3].

On the other hand, serological tests are relatively inexpensive and easy to perform. These characteristics make them the most used tests for dengue infection. IgM levels begin to rise on the third day of a primary infection and peak at 2 weeks after the onset of fever (Figure 5). IgG is detectable at the end of the first week of illness and may persist for life. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) tests can analyze the levels of IgM and IgG, and the IgM/IgG ratio is useful to distinguish primary from secondary infections. The IgM/IgG ratio greater than 1.4 is indicative of primary dengue infection, while the IgM/IgG ratio lesser than 1.2 is indicative of secondary dengue infection. The potential cross-reactivity of dengue virus with other flaviviridae when using serological assays remains a significant limitation for its use. Prior vaccination against yellow fever can also lead to a false positive serological test for dengue virus. The prolonged period of seroconversion also results in false negatives [3]. All flaviviruses produce a glycoprotein called NS1 and tests such as antigen capture ELISA and quick tests based on immunochromatography can be used to identify it in the bloodstream; it is detectable from days 0 to 9 after the onset of symptoms, although detection appears to be higher in the samples collected up to 3 days after the onset of symptoms. Quick tests are now available and provide results in 15 min. Rapid tests for NS1 have been estimated to have a significantly higher sensitivity for primary infections (94.7%) than for secondary infections (67.1%; p < 0.001) and now appear to be a potential alternative to culture, PCR, and serology [38].

The Brazilian Ministry of Health recommends that samples of patients with suspected dengue fever taken up to 8 days (preferably 5) after the onset of symptoms should be processed using ELISA for the detection of NS1 and qRT PCR for the detection of the DENV genome and the serotype. At 8–15 days after the onset of symptoms, the samples are analyzed for IgM detection using ELISA. After 15 days,
the sera are selected for IgG using ELISA. Dengue infection cannot be excluded in samples that are negative for the NS1 antigen and must be confirmed by IgM/IgG detection [35].

Cases of DENV-2 had a higher proportion of severe dengue than among those of DENV-1 and DENV-4 [39]. Nevertheless, the secondary infection was not a predictor of severe clinical manifestation in adults, who were primarily infected with serotype DENV-3 [40]; on the other hand, the dengue in children have suggested that infection with secondary DENV-2 is more likely to result in severe disease compared with other serotypes [41].

The fifth variant DENV-5 has been isolated in October 2013. This serotype follows the sylvatic cycle unlike the other four serotypes which follow the human cycle. The likely cause of emergence of the new serotype could be genetic recombination, natural selection, and genetic bottlenecks [42].

4. Diagnosis of dengue and other arbovirosis in the context of the Guillain Barre syndrome epidemic

During the months of June–July of 2019, 35 cases were registered and diagnosed as the Guillain-Barre Syndrome, at the Almanzor Aguinaga Asenjo National Hospital of Chiclayo in Peru, of which 22 had electrophysiology results compatible with the said syndrome, two had a normal result, and 11 were not evaluated with the mentioned diagnostic test. Three cases had IgG for flavivirus, three cases had IgG for flavivirus and IgG for chikungunya concomitantly, four cases had IgG for chikungunya, and one case had IgM for chikungunya. In other words, there were 11 cases of patients with a history of flavivirus or chikungunya infections in the context of the presentation of Guillain-Barre syndrome [43]. These patients were evaluated with the recomLine Tropical Fever IgG and IgM tests, immunoblot of German origin that has a sensitivity for IgG of 100% for primary infection by Zika, 100% for secondary infection for dengue or Zika, and 98.6% for primary infection by dengue; also the IgM has a sensitivity of 72.7% for dengue or Zika, and both tests have a specificity of 96–100%. On the other hand, the mentioned test describes a sensitivity and specificity of 100% for both IgM and IgG for chikungunya’s diagnosis [44].

In the literature, there is the case of a dengue patient who developed Guillain-Barre syndrome, who presented the NS1 antigen on the second day of symptoms with subsequent IgM and IgG positive on the sixth day of evolution [45]. There is also another case described with similar laboratory findings, but that developed the syndrome approximately 2 weeks after the onset of dengue symptoms [46]. Therefore, this syndrome could develop early or late in relation to the onset of symptoms due to infection. In our cases, we did not have positive IgM and we did not have the opportunity to evaluate the NS1 antigen, but it is noteworthy that all cases detected with flavivirus antibodies only had positive IgG in their results. The previous cases described in the existing literature may represent primary cases of dengue since they raised IgM values early.

In our cases, the majority of patients did not show joint pain during the diagnosis of Guillain-Barre syndrome, which could suggest that these are non-acute cases, but as described in the case cited, this syndrome may occur during convalescence of the dengue; on the other hand, in an endemic area such as Lambayeque-Peru, the presence of cases with secondary infection that usually have low IgM values and not even increase it (Figure 5) should not attract attention [47]. In addition, Ramabhatta et al. [48] conducted a study on a sample of 568 cases diagnosed of dengue and showed that IgG-positive patients were more prone to complications
than IgM-positive patients, therefore, the etiological association between dengue and Guillain-Barre syndrome in the Lambayeque region could not be ruled out.

5. Dengue lethality

5.1 Lethality in the context of Peru and Latin America

In 2014, according to WHO and Pan American Health Organization (PAHO), the average fatality rate for the Americas is 0.04%, being among the countries with the highest rate, followed by Dominican Republic with 1.54%, Peru with 0.12%, compared to Guatemala and Colombia that have 0.07% [49]. In Colombia and Peru, the most frequent serotype 2 prevailed, and in the Dominican Republic serotype 4 prevailed [50].

Nationally, the Center for Epidemiology, Prevention and Control of Diseases of the Ministry of Health, reported in 2017, 76,093 cases of dengue in the country (3.03 times more cases in relation to 2016, and the largest number of cases reported in the last 5 years [9, 51] and 92 reports of deaths by dengue, the highest number reported in the last 10 years) (Figure 6).

About 43.6% came from Piura, 17.1% from Loreto, 9.9% from Madre de Dios, 8.8% from Ucayali, 4.2% from San Martín, and the remaining 16.4% from other regions; all the age groups were affected, but with a greater proportion in people over 65 (37%) and young adults (21.7%) [9].

In the Piura Healthcare Network, 30 deaths associated with dengue virus were confirmed by laboratory, and occurred between epidemiological weeks Nos. 08 and 35, over 8 months; a similar panorama reported by the Lambayeque Healthcare Network, which reported the death of six dengue-associated patients, until epidemiological week No. 20 [13, 52]; although this information could be underestimated, because in many cases it is attributed to pneumonia, and actually the cases of dengue are not properly diagnosed, causing figures not approximate to reality [53].

![Figure 6](image-url)

**Figure 6.** Death toll and dengue lethality in Peru, 2008–2017. Source: Malaria disease surveillance system of the Center for Epidemiology, Disease Prevention and Control of the Ministry of Health (CDC-Perú).
In the departments of the north coast of Peru, such as Piura and Lambayeque, there are several conditions that favor the presence of epidemics, rainfall, and flooding due to the occurrence of the Coastal El Niño phenomenon, population growth at risk (young People, Urban Marginal Neighborhoods, etc) that is associated with the non-existence of basic infrastructure, insufficient water supply that leads to temporary water storage, constant circulation of *Aedes aegypti*, high temperatures and humidity, and poor community empowerment in the integrated control of vector control. Also in the Peruvian jungle, such as Loreto, Madre de Dios, Ucayali, and San Martin, they have a high incidence of death and lethality due to their diverse climatic and sanitary conditions, in addition to their population growth [13].

In the Healthcare Network of Piura, 22,562 cases of dengue were notified, 88 of which were severe dengue and 30 died, with 1.3% of lethality in general and 34.1% of lethality of severe cases; in Lambayeque there were 1384 cases; 13 being cases of severe dengue and nine deaths due to dengue, which makes 9.4% lethality in general and 43.3% lethality of severe cases, showing differences with national figures [37] (Table 3).

Although serotypes 2 and 3 were isolated in 94% of the positive cases; in Piura and Lambayeque, it was serotype 3 that was isolated in 90% of the cases and in almost all the deceased cases.

5.2 Delays in the process of health care as a method to identify the causes of mortality

The “delays” proposed by Thaddeus et al. in 1993, considered as the time between the appearance of a complication and its appropriate treatment and control of vector control. Also in the Peruvian jungle, such as Loreto, Madre de Dios, Ucayali, and San Martin, they have a high incidence of death and lethality due to their diverse climatic and sanitary conditions, in addition to their population growth [13].

In the Healthcare Network of Piura, 22,562 cases of dengue were notified, 88 of which were severe dengue and 30 died, with 1.3% of lethality in general and 34.1% of lethality of severe cases; in Lambayeque there were 1384 cases; 13 being cases of severe dengue and nine deaths due to dengue, which makes 9.4% lethality in general and 43.3% lethality of severe cases, showing differences with national figures [37] (Table 3).

Although serotypes 2 and 3 were isolated in 94% of the positive cases; in Piura and Lambayeque, it was serotype 3 that was isolated in 90% of the cases and in almost all the deceased cases.

5.2 Delays in the process of health care as a method to identify the causes of mortality

The “delays” proposed by Thaddeus et al. in 1993, considered as the time between the appearance of a complication and its appropriate treatment and control of vector control. Also in the Peruvian jungle, such as Loreto, Madre de Dios, Ucayali, and San Martin, they have a high incidence of death and lethality due to their diverse climatic and sanitary conditions, in addition to their population growth [13].

In the Healthcare Network of Piura, 22,562 cases of dengue were notified, 88 of which were severe dengue and 30 died, with 1.3% of lethality in general and 34.1% of lethality of severe cases; in Lambayeque there were 1384 cases; 13 being cases of severe dengue and nine deaths due to dengue, which makes 9.4% lethality in general and 43.3% lethality of severe cases, showing differences with national figures [37] (Table 3).

Although serotypes 2 and 3 were isolated in 94% of the positive cases; in Piura and Lambayeque, it was serotype 3 that was isolated in 90% of the cases and in almost all the deceased cases.

5.2 Delays in the process of health care as a method to identify the causes of mortality

The “delays” proposed by Thaddeus et al. in 1993, considered as the time between the appearance of a complication and its appropriate treatment and

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Serotype</th>
<th>N° dengue cases</th>
<th>N° severe cases</th>
<th>Deceased</th>
<th>General lethality (×1000)</th>
<th>Severe cases lethality (×100)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
<td>DEN 1,3</td>
<td>387,669</td>
<td>1476</td>
<td>318</td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>21.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>DEN 1,3</td>
<td>557</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolivia</td>
<td>DEN 1,4</td>
<td>10,842</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>22.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colombia</td>
<td>DEN 1,2,3</td>
<td>26,279</td>
<td>286</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>5.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chile</td>
<td>DEN 1,3</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecuador</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>11,387</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>22.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>DEN 1,2,3,4</td>
<td>252,054</td>
<td>378</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>35.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venezuela</td>
<td>DEN 1</td>
<td>8615</td>
<td>359</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>4.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraguay</td>
<td>DEN 1,2</td>
<td>1832</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uruguay</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peru</td>
<td>DEN 2,3</td>
<td>74,648</td>
<td>251</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>36.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essalud Piura*</td>
<td>DEN 2,3</td>
<td>22,562</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>34.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essalud Lambayeque*</td>
<td>DEN 2,3</td>
<td>1384</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>43.3%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3. General lethality and severe cases lethality of dengue reported by Social Security of Piura and Lambayeque compared to countries of South America, 2017.

*Taken and adapted: Díaz-Vélez et al. [37, 50].
resolution, initiating these concepts in the framework of care for severe maternal mortality and morbidity evaluating them as autonomy factors for the search for medical care, distance, and health services [36]. The use of this approach is considered, since it would allow to identify and classify the barriers and situations related to the search for medical care in patients affected by dengue, which are part of a chain of delays or delays that would hinder risk prevention, limit the access to quality health services, and would result in the lack of timely attention to the complication and, consequently, in death [54].

5.2.1 Delay in the recognition of the health problem

Poor recognition of a clinical disorder is one of the factors that cause the delay in seeking attention. It includes deficiencies in health education for communities and families, which makes it difficult to recognize warning signs (signs and symptoms) in conditions that can be life-threatening [36].

5.2.2 Delay in deciding to get attention

This delay is usually caused by limitations in the understanding of what medical care implies and could lead to a large number of patients arriving at health facilities in poor conditions, including factors such as information on dengue and institutional recognition, social and environmental situation, onset of symptoms, self-medication, gender and initial care, and motivations to make decisions [36, 55].

5.2.3 Delay in arriving at health services

It involves the difficulty of arriving at a health facility, either because of the difficult access to services or because it takes too long to reach the place of care, which can discourage the patient from seeking care, even when he has decided to seek care opportunely. It is generally the result of the lack of access to health services and economic, organizational, and sociocultural barriers which control the use of services. It is also possible to mention travel time, transport system used, and the socioeconomic impact of the delay [36, 55].

5.2.4 Delay in receiving the appropriate treatment

The cumulative effect of the first and second delays helps increase the risk of arrival at the health facility in serious conditions. Some never arrive at the hospital, and even if they do, it is possible that the treatment given to them is not adequate and poor surveillance or administrative procedures hinder the care. Other studies have shown more causes for inadequate treatment: chronic lack of trained personnel and essential supplies. Other factors mentioned are: failures in the operation of the public network, which determines waiting, reconsultation, and family movements between institutions; poor staff training and high emergency saturation [36, 55].

In relation to the first delay, aspects such as the delay in recognizing the health problem, absence of preventive-promotional talks, and lack of recognition of risk situations are described as the main ones, similar to studies that describe the population ignorance about the possibility of disease severity [56]. This last point reflects the poor knowledge by the population of less frequent dengue symptoms that in turn are associated with severity [57]. In the second delay, there are cases that went to non-health personnel and even self-medicating that are associated with delay as an explanation of serious or fatal cases [55, 58, 59] (Figure 7).
6. Preventive measures against dengue

A study conducted in a population with a recent dengue outbreak showed that the level of knowledge was low in 76.2% of the population, 45% did not recognize the bite of the vector as the form of disease transmission, and 34% did not recognize the etiologic agent; of the most recognized clinical manifestations were fever, followed by headache, and musculoskeletal pain. Overall, 74.9% have a low level of knowledge about warning signs and about 93% were intermediate/low in prevention, and 43% of them are unaware of the reproduction of the vector, and 71% are unaware of the role of abate; results that show that the population despite having been exposed still does not know the prevention measures [61].

PAHO has planned to cooperate with member countries to stimulate the search for concrete solutions through a communication methodology to impact behavior (COMBI) [62, 63]. It should be noted that, since the introduction of dengue in America, attempts have been made to propose some integrated programs, with a community approach to the control of *Aedes aegypti*. This approach has been to educate the community about dengue disease and how to prevent transmission by controlling the *Aedes aegypti* vector in the domestic and
In two Essalud Hospitals, in the Departments of Piura and Lambayeque, during 2017. Taken from: Burga-Cueva et al. Analysis of Lethality by 

Timeline of delays in the process of care of lethal cases care of dengue in two hospitals of EsSalud, in the Departments of Piura and Lambayeque, in the situation of Dengue after the Phenomenon of the Coastal El Niño. 2017. [64].

Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

This study was carried out in order to conduct an epidemiological analysis of Dengue Fever, a mosquito-borne disease, in two hospitals in Lambayeque and Piura, during 2017. The aim was to determine the lethality of the disease, and the delays in the process of care.

Prevention strategies to control mosquito populations were found to be effective in reducing the transmission of Dengue Fever. However, there is still a lack of awareness among the population about preventive measures and the risk of the disease.

The discipline of vector control has been influenced by the theory developed by Ronald Ross and George Macdonald (i.e., the Ross-Macdonald model). This theory states that the potential for transmission of mosquito-borne pathogens depends largely on the abundance of adult vector mosquitoes, survival through the incubation period of the pathogen, and the rate of human infection.
Therefore, with this approach, interventions that reduce the population density of adult mosquitoes, the daily probability of survival, and the contact of the mosquito with humans are expected to have the greatest impact on decreasing virus transmission. It should be noted, however, that the Ross-Macdonald model was not formulated to specifically explore larval mosquito control. Recent quantitative assessments indicate that, under certain circumstances, control of the larvae may lead to greater than expected reductions in the transmission of pathogens [77]. In the context of larval control of *Aedes aegypti*, there should be the large-scale elimination of potential hatcheries.

In this context, taking into account that there is limited efficacy and intensity of the interventions used for dengue vector control, other alternatives to combat dengue endemic persistence are explored. Sustainable community participation and school-based health education interventions have finally evolved as an effective tool in reducing the larval source over other interventions [78], since children have inherent curiosity and enthusiasm to learn new things. Therefore, they can serve as an effective change agent to achieve a change in behavior in the family and community.

Methods for vector control include elimination or management of larval habitats, eliminating larvae with insecticides, the use of biological agents, and the application of adulticides; being for our conviction the elimination and management of larval habitats. Habitats are eliminated by preventing the access of mosquitoes to these containers or by emptying and cleaning them frequently, eliminating the evolutionary stages with the use of insecticides or biological control agents, eliminating adult mosquitoes with insecticides, or by combining these methods [79].

Habitat management seeks to change the environment in order to prevent or minimize the propagation of vectors and human contact with the vector pathogen, destroying, altering (proper conservation of disused material), and eliminating or recycling nonessential containers that serve as larval habitats. Efforts to reduce solid waste should be directed against disposable or nonessential containers [78]. However, the main method of *Aedes* control (and, generally, the only one) used in many countries, remains the spatial application of ultralow volume insecticides (ULVs) for the control of adult mosquitoes [63]. This strategy has to be repeated constantly, its cost is high, and its effectiveness is limited. *Aedes aegypti* prefers to stay inside the houses, therefore, the insecticide aerial application or from trucks simply does not reach the mosquitoes that stay in hidden places, such as wardrobes. There have been several cases of homeowners in various countries who have not allowed the entry of home spraying equipment or have closed windows and doors well to prevent outside fog produced by the insecticide from entering their homes, reducing in this way the effectiveness of the intervention [65] (Table 4).

Due to inadequate dengue surveillance systems, spraying does not arrive in time to prevent epidemic transmission, and adult mosquito populations return quickly after spraying. Public confidence and complacency regarding such an ineffective approach have only made the challenge of explaining the need for community participation in hatchery control greater [79].

Therefore, our approach, which is the most cost-effective measure to control the transmission of dengue, would be based on the design and execution of activities aimed at eradicating vector proliferation through the elimination of favorable habitats (potential hatcheries: tires, bottles, and buckets) for oviposition and allowing the development of the aquatic stages of the vector; with a participatory methodology based on the sociocultural characteristics of the population under study, with the local schools as main actors; for which, at first, the level of knowledge, attitude, and practice of dengue prevention measures of the population must be determined and from which it will design and carry out promotional, prevention interventions, with emphasis on behavioral changes.
Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

Methods for vector control include elimination or management of larval habitats. Habitats are eliminated by preventing the access of mosquitoes to them, eliminating larvae with insecticides, the use of biological agents, and the application of adulticides; being for our conviction the elimination and management of nonessential containers that serve as larval habitats. Efforts to reduce the larval source over other interventions [78], since children have inherent curiosity and enthusiasm to learn new things. Therefore, they can serve as an effective change agent to achieve a change in behavior in the family and community.

The effectiveness of dengue vector control programs depends on the ability of the interventions used for dengue vector control, other alternatives to combat dengue endemic persistence are explored. Sustainable community participation and the assessment of programs monitor the transmission. It should be noted, however, that the Ross-Macdonald model was not formulated to specifically explore larval mosquito control. Recent quantitative assessments indicate that, under certain circumstances, control of the larvae may lead to greater than expected reductions in the transmission of pathogens [77]. In the context of larval control of *Aedes aegypti*, there should be the large-scale elimination of potential hatcheries.

There have been several cases of homeowners in various countries who have not changed their breeding practices of dengue prevention measures of the population must be determined and practiced in many countries, remains the spatial application of ultralow volume insecticides (ULVs) for the control of adult mosquitoes [63]. This strategy has to be repeated constantly, its cost is high, and its effectiveness is limited.

Due to inadequate dengue surveillance systems, spraying does not arrive in time to prevent epidemic transmission, and adult mosquito populations return quickly allowing the entry of home spraying equipment or have closed windows and doors. Public confidence and complacency regarding such an ineffective practice of dengue prevention measures of the population must be determined and practiced.

Table 4.
Comprehensive behavioral monitoring of mobilization and social communication for dengue prevention and control.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aedes mosquito breeding prevention</th>
<th>Prevention of exposure to Aedes mosquito bites</th>
<th>Search for medical attention</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Individuals and households</td>
<td>• Water storage practices</td>
<td>• Use of insecticides and spray repellents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Home plant care</td>
<td>• Placing wire mesh on windows and doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Animal care</td>
<td>• Sleep protected by a mosquito net during naps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Garbage disposal</td>
<td>• Disease recognition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Storage of daytime materials in the yard</td>
<td>• Home treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communities, community groups, schools, NGOs</td>
<td>• Communication with behavioral impact</td>
<td>• Facilitation of patient transport to health facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Community cleaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Promotion or organization of essential services: water, garbage collection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Promotion of the recycling of tires, cans, bottles, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Finally, the need for a good understanding and emphasis on behaviors related to the management of *Aedes aegypti* hatcheries, the main dengue vector; it should be the promotion and prevention approach at the community level, divided into individual and collective activities for the prevention of *Aedes aegypti* reproduction, prevention of exposure to *Aedes* mosquitoes, and seeking medical attention.

Taken from: Parks W, Lloyd L. COMBI. Planning social mobilization and communication for the prevention and control of dengue. Ginebra; 2004 [65].

http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.92095
Situation of Dengue after the Phenomenon of the Coastal El Niño

DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.92095

References


[12] Ministry of Health of Peru MINSA. Dengue Situation Room in Peru. DGE SE 1; 2018


References


[12] Ministry of Health of Peru MINSA. Dengue Situation Room in Peru. DGE SE 1; 2018


Available from: https://pubag.nal.usda.gov/download/55909/PDF


[17] Ministry of Health of Peru MINSA. Dengue situation room in Peru. DGE SE 29; 2017


Chikungunya, Zika, and Dengue in an area of the Peruvian coast. Molecular diagnosis and clinical characteristics. BMC Research Notes. 2018;11(1):175


[42] Ralapanawa DMPUK, Kularatne SAM, Jayalath WATA. Guillain-Barré syndrome following dengue fever and literature review. BMC Research Notes. 2015;8:729


[53] Ardila Pinto F, Martínez S, Fuentes M, Borrero E. Análisis de las demoras en salud en personas que
enfermaron de gravedad o fallecieron por dengue en cinco ciudades de Colombia. Physis Rev Saúde Coletiva. 2015;25:571-592


[58] Dávila-Gonzales JA, Guevara-Cruz LA, Peña-Sánchez ER, Díaz-Vélez C. Validation of an instrument to measure the level of knowledge in people about dengue, alarm signs and prevention in a district with a recent outbreak of dengue. La Revista Hispanoamericana de Ciencias de la Salud. 2018;4(3):119-128


[61] Stefany Niño-Effio B, Yong-Cadena HA, Díaz-Vélez C. Knowledge and practices regarding dengue prevention in a Peruvian city affected by a dengue epidemic following the 2018 Coastal Child 2018. Revista Cubana de Medicina Tropical. 2019;71(2)


[64] Parks W, Lloyd L. Planificación de la movilización y comunicación social para la prevención y el control del dengue: guía paso a paso. Ginebra: Organización Mundial de la Salud; 2004


[68] Dengue Control in North Queensland, Australia: Case Recognition and Selective Indoor Residual Spraying [Internet]. [citado 16 de febrero de 2020]. Available from: https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/163762


[76] WHO. Manejo ambiental para el control de vectores [Internet]. WHO [citado 16 de febrero de 2020]. Available from: https://www.who.int/water_sanitation_health/resources/envmanagement/es/


[79] Díaz-Vélez C. Prevention of metaxenic diseases: Repellents, important but little used weapon. La Revista del Cuerpo Médico del Hospital Nacional Almanzor Aguinaga Asenjo. 2018;11(2):67-68
Section 2

Immunopathogenesis
Chapter 4

Dengue Immunopathogenesis: A Crosstalk between Host and Viral Factors Leading to Disease:

Part I - Dengue Virus Tropism, Host Innate Immune Responses, and Subversion of Antiviral Responses

Henry Puerta-Guardo, Scott B. Biering, Eva Harris, Norma Pavia-Ruz, Gonzalo Vázquez-Prokopec, Guadalupe Ayora-Talavera and Pablo Manrique-Saide

Abstract

Dengue is the most prevalent emerging mosquito-borne viral disease, affecting more than 40% of the human population worldwide. Many symptomatic dengue virus (DENV) infections result in a relatively benign disease course known as dengue fever (DF). However, a small proportion of patients develop severe clinical manifestations, englobed in two main categories known as dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) and dengue shock syndrome (DSS). Secondary infection with any of the four dengue virus serotypes (DENV1, -2, -3, and -4) is a risk factor to develop severe forms of dengue disease. DSS is primarily characterized by sudden and abrupt endothelial dysfunction, resulting in vascular leak and organ impairment, which may progress to hypovolemic shock and death. Severe DENV disease (DHF/DSS) is thought to follow a complex relationship between distinct immunopathogenic processes involving host and viral factors, such as the serotype cross-reactive antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE), the activation of T cells and complement pathways, the phenomenon of the cytokine storm, and the newly described viral toxin activity of the nonstructural protein 1 (NS1), which together play critical roles in inducing vascular leak and virus pathogenesis. In this chapter that is divided in two parts, we will outline the recent advances in our understanding of DENV pathogenesis, highlighting key viral-host interactions and discussing how these interactions may contribute to DENV immunopathology and the development of vascular leak, a hallmark of severe dengue.

Part I will address the general features of the DENV complex, including the virus structure and genome, epidemiology, and clinical outcomes, followed by an updated review of the literature describing the host innate immune strategies as well as the viral mechanisms acting against and in favor of the DENV replication cycle and infection.
Chapter 4

Dengue Immunopathogenesis: A Crosstalk between Host and Viral Factors Leading to Disease: Part I - Dengue Virus Tropism, Host Innate Immune Responses, and Subversion of Antiviral Responses

Henry Puerta-Guardo, Scott B. Biering, Eva Harris, Norma Pavia-Ruz, Gonzalo Vázquez-Prokopec, Guadalupe Ayora-Talavera and Pablo Manrique-Saide

Abstract

Dengue is the most prevalent emerging mosquito-borne viral disease, affecting more than 40% of the human population worldwide. Many symptomatic dengue virus (DENV) infections result in a relatively benign disease course known as dengue fever (DF). However, a small proportion of patients develop severe clinical manifestations, englobed in two main categories known as dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) and dengue shock syndrome (DSS). Secondary infection with any of the four dengue virus serotypes (DENV1, -2, -3, and -4) is a risk factor to develop severe forms of dengue disease. DSS is primarily characterized by sudden and abrupt endothelial dysfunction, resulting in vascular leak and organ impairment, which may progress to hypovolemic shock and death. Severe DENV disease (DHF/ DSS) is thought to follow a complex relationship between distinct immunopathogenic processes involving host and viral factors, such as the serotype cross-reactive antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE), the activation of T cells and complement pathways, the phenomenon of the cytokine storm, and the newly described viral toxin activity of the nonstructural protein 1 (NS1), which together play critical roles in inducing vascular leak and virus pathogenesis. In this chapter that is divided in two parts, we will outline the recent advances in our understanding of DENV pathogenesis, highlighting key viral-host interactions and discussing how these interactions may contribute to DENV immunopathology and the development of vascular leak, a hallmark of severe dengue. Part I will address the general features of the DENV complex, including the virus structure and genome, epidemiology, and clinical outcomes, followed by an updated review of the literature describing the host innate immune strategies as well as the viral mechanisms acting against and in favor of the DENV replication cycle and infection.
Keywords: dengue, immunopathogenesis, dengue shock syndrome, severe dengue, virus replication, cell tropism, innate immune response, antiviral response, immune evasion, complement, endothelial dysfunction, vascular leak

1. Introduction

Dengue is still considered the most prevalent viral disease transmitted by arthropod mosquitoes (e.g., *Aedes* mosquitoes), with 50–100 million dengue infections occurring annually, and a global incidence of 30-fold increase observed over the past 50 years [1–3]. Most of the dengue infections with any of the four dengue virus (DENV) serotypes [1–4] result in inapparent, subclinical illness, or mild disease symptoms known as dengue fever (DF). However, some DENV infections can potentially evolve into more severe and fatal disease outcomes known as dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) and dengue shock syndrome (DSS) [2]. DHF and DSS are mainly characterized by low numbers of circulating platelets (thrombocytopenia) associated with hemorrhagic manifestations and increased vascular permeability associated with endothelium hyperpermeability, resulting in plasma leakage, low blood pressure, and shock that can lead to death [2]. DENV infections frequently occur in the context of preexisting immunity, where the immune responses to prior DENV infection play an important role in determining the outcome of dengue epidemics and disease severity via antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) and potentially harmful T cell responses in an original antigenic sin-dependent manner [4–8]. Both mechanisms lead to increased activation of immune cells, resulting in exacerbated immune responses or cytokine storms that cause endothelium dysfunction and vascular leak [9, 10]. Collectively, these host immunological responses are thought to create a physiological environment that promotes vascular permeability. However, the exact mechanisms underlying the capillary leak are probably more complex than a cytokine storm, and the risk of severe disease upon DENV infection cannot be explained completely by a misdirected host immune response to a prior infecting serotype; rather, disease severity appears to be determined by a combination of multiple host and viral factors leading to favorable and unfavorable interactions that regulate viral pathogenesis.

Despite considerable advances in understanding the immunological mechanisms activated during DENV infection, the pathogenic mechanisms underlying the alterations in permeability of the microvasculature remain unclear. The absence of a good animal model faithful to human disease and the limited knowledge of the factors regulating the intrinsic microvascular permeability in health have seriously hampered the research progress in this area. However, in the last decades, significant progress has been made regarding viral and host cellular components involved in DENV infection and disease [8]. The nonstructural protein 1 (NS1) protein of DENV and other related flaviviruses has been described as an essential cofactor in virus replication and assembly [11, 12]. Interestingly, the secreted form of NS1 is also implicated in immune evasion strategies via interaction with several proteins of the complement pathways that protect the virus-infected cells from the immune system processing [12–14]. Contrary, NS1 and anti-NS1 antibodies can also mediate complement activation that may alter capillary permeability [15]. Additionally, the soluble NS1 from DENV can interact with the surface of endothelial cells, immune cells, and platelets to cause endothelial barrier dysfunction and vascular leakage, and potentially hampers the coagulation cascades leading to hemorrhagic manifestations during DENV infection. These phenomena occur via activation of endothelial-intrinsic mechanisms leading to the disruption of the EGL and the integrity of the cell-to-cell contacts and/or induction of pro-inflammatory cytokines, chemokines,
and proteases via the TLR4 activation of monocytes/macrophages that may act also on endothelial cells leading to endothelial hyperpermeability and vascular leak [16–22]. Furthermore, NS1 is highly immunogenic and conserved between the Flavivirus genus; thus, NS1 from other flaviviruses have been also reported to activate endothelial-intrinsic mechanisms causing vascular leakage in a tissue-dependent manner that mimics each flavivirus disease pathophysiology [17, 23–25]. Additionally, NS1 immunization using mouse models and DENV vaccination or natural DENV infection in humans can elicit antibodies’ responses that have been implicated in the contradictory roles of protection and pathogenesis in the infected host [25–42]. Today, no specific and effective vaccine candidate, antiviral therapy, or anti-inflammatory therapeutics have been licensed to combat dengue disease. An effective dengue vaccine is surely needed to avert the millions of dengue cases that occur around the world, continuously threatening with fatal outcomes. For decades, numerous experts in infectious diseases including clinicians, epidemiologists, basic scientists, and vaccine and drug developers have been trying to elucidate the ultimate mechanism of DENV pathogenesis leading to severe dengue disease. The NS1 protein of flaviviruses constitutes a unique “viral toxin” that seems to connect many of the already described DENV immunopathogenic mechanisms leading to severe dengue disease; thus, NS1 might represent the corner piece that completes the elusive dengue pathogenesis puzzle. Therapeutic approaches and vaccine development targeting NS1 may provide different opportunities for the future defeating of the global dengue disease. A better understanding of DENV immunopathogenesis will assist not only in the development of therapeutic interventions but also in the understanding of dengue vaccine efficacy or vaccine adverse events. This chapter briefly summaries the key clinical, virological, and epidemiological facts about DENV innate and humoral responses and gives an extensive update of insights about the viral and host factors that contribute to DENV pathogenesis leading to the development of severe dengue manifestations during DENV infection.

2. Dengue virus features: genomic organization, structure, and life cycle

Dengue virus (DENV) belongs to the genus Flavivirus (family Flaviviridae), a group of small (50-nm virion diameter) viruses containing a single-positive-stranded RNA genome [5′ capped, not 3′ poly(A) tail] which encodes for three structural proteins: capsid (C), membrane (M), and envelope (E) and seven nonstructural (NS) proteins named NS1, NS2A, NS2B, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, and NS5 (Figure 1A, B) [43]. The DENV group is comprised of four evolutionary distinct but antigenically and genetically related viruses better known as DENV serotypes −1, −2, −3, and −4 (DENV-1-4), [44, 45]. These four established serotypes (DENV 1–4) share a high degree of sequence similarity between the genomes (~65–70%) [46], with average sequence identity between proteomes of 39–79% [47]. DENV is transmitted to humans by Aedes mosquitoes, mainly Aedes aegypti. However, the global distribution of Aedes albopictus (the Asian tiger mosquito), considered a secondary vector for DENV transmission, is changing rapidly and it is now becoming an increasingly important vector and a common cause of epidemics in Aedes aegypti-free countries [48–50]. Human-to-mosquito transmission occurs once the mosquito takes a blood meal from DENV-infected people who are viremic, which is normally up to 2 days before someone shows symptoms of the illness or up to 2 days after the fever has resolved. High viremia and high fever in patients are positively associated with a high rate of DENV transmission from humans to mosquitoes [51]. After feeding on a DENV-infected person, depending mainly on temperature, the virus rapidly replicates in the mosquito’s midgut, and within an average of 5.9 days,
After a mosquito bites a human, DENV is delivered into the dermis where it can infect/replicate in dendritic cells (DCs) (Langerhans cells) and keratinocytes residing in the basal and suprabasal layers of the epidermis [54–56] (Figure 2). Virus dissemination to the local lymph nodes occurs in association with infected migratory dendritic cells or as free viruses of the lymphatic fluid leading to viremia [57]. At this stage, mosquito saliva has shown to enhance the replication and it disseminates to secondary tissues, including the salivary glands where the virus can be transmitted to the new host (extrinsic incubation period) [52]. Once infectious, the mosquito is capable of transmitting the virus for the rest of its life [53].

Figure 2

A

5’-m^G  Structural  Non-structural  3’-OH

Polyprotein

C  pre-M  E  NS1  NS2A  NS2B  NS3  NS4A  NS4B  NS5

B

Soluble hexameric NS1 protein

β-cell domain

hydrophobic core

(α-helices, 
triple helix, 
phospholipids)

β-bladder domain

B

C

Serotypes: DENV-1  DENV-2  DENV-3  DENV-4

Primary infection

(Asymptomatic or mild disease)

Secondary infection

Increased risk of severe dengue (DHF/DSS) disease

sequential infection

Immune response outcome

Predominantly homotypic antibody, B cell, and T cell responses.

Serotype specific and highly cross-reactive & heterologous antibody and B cell responses. Expansion of cross-reactive T cells from primary infection.
residing in the basal and suprabasal layers of the epidermis [54–56] (Figure 2). The mosquito is capable of transmitting the virus for the rest of its life [53]. Once infected, the mosquito can infect/replicate in dendritic cells (DCs) (Langerhans cells) and keratinocytes. The extrinsic incubation period lasts 3 to 6 days, during which the virus is transmitted to the new host. Once infectious, the virus disseminates to secondary tissues, including the salivary glands where the virus can be transmitted to the new host (extrinsic incubation period) [52]. Once infectious, the mosquito is capable of transmitting the virus for the rest of its life [53].

Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

After a mosquito bites a human, DENV is delivered into the dermis where it mediate and nonclassical clathrin-independent endocytosis [64, 65]. Despite this, the current model suggests that DENV uses both attachment factors and primary receptor(s) that facilitate virus recruitment on the cell surface, and later, internalization inside host cells via receptor-mediated endocytosis including clathrin-mediated and nonclassical clathrin-independent endocytosis [64, 65]. Despite this, the single definitive receptor mediating this critical step in the DENV replication cycle continues to be elusive. So far, numerous candidates have been described in the mammalian and mosquito cells, including glycosaminoglycans such as heparan sulfate and lectins, the adhesion molecule of dendritic cells (DC-SIGN), the mannose receptor (MR) of macrophages, the lipopolysaccharide (LPS) receptor CD14, and stress-induced proteins such as the heat-shock proteins 70 and 90 and the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) chaperonin GRP78 [64–68]. This suggests that DENV may not use a unique, specific receptor to enter cells, but recognizes diverse molecules, both in the vertebrate and mosquito hosts, which can potentially explain the broad tissue range that defines DENV tropism and infection.

After the internalization of the virion, a fusion between the viral E protein and the endosomal membrane mediates the access of the viral genome into the cytoplasm [43, 65]. The E protein is a glycosylated viral protein and a member of class II viral membrane fusion protein family [43, 69]. The crystal structure of

The current model suggests that DENV uses both attachment factors and primary receptor(s) that facilitate virus recruitment on the cell surface, and later, internalization inside host cells via receptor-mediated endocytosis including clathrin-mediated and nonclassical clathrin-independent endocytosis [64, 65]. Despite this, the single definitive receptor mediating this critical step in the DENV replication cycle continues to be elusive. So far, numerous candidates have been described in the mammalian and mosquito cells, including glycosaminoglycans such as heparan sulfate and lectins, the adhesion molecule of dendritic cells (DC-SIGN), the mannose receptor (MR) of macrophages, the lipopolysaccharide (LPS) receptor CD14, and stress-induced proteins such as the heat-shock proteins 70 and 90 and the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) chaperonin GRP78 [64–68]. This suggests that DENV may not use a unique, specific receptor to enter cells, but recognizes diverse molecules, both in the vertebrate and mosquito hosts, which can potentially explain the broad tissue range that defines DENV tropism and infection.

After the internalization of the virion, a fusion between the viral E protein and the endosomal membrane mediates the access of the viral genome into the cytoplasm [43, 65]. The E protein is a glycosylated viral protein and a member of class II viral membrane fusion protein family [43, 69]. The crystal structure of
Viral RNA synthesis relies on NS5, the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase. The single-stranded positive-sense RNA immediately acts as a messenger RNA, which can be subsequently translated by cellular machinery to generate viral RNA, which can be subsequently translated by cellular machinery to generate viral proteins, subsequently processed by both cellular and viral proteases to generate mature viral proteins. In this stage, the nonstructural proteins have been shown to induce massive remodeling of ER membranes, manifesting as convoluted polyproteins, subsequently processed by both cellular and viral proteases to form a dynamic and membrane-bound multi-protein assembly, named the replication complex (RC) where the genome is replicated, and new viral RNA copies are incorporated into nascent particles. Viral RNA synthesis relies on NS5, the RNA-dependent RNA polymerase as well as on critical RNA secondary and tertiary structures.
protease-helicase which together with its cofactor NS2B, participates in the processing, efficient RNA synthesis, and capping of the viral polyprotein [72, 76, 77]. NS2A recruits nascent RNA as well as C-pre-M-E [78]. NS1 interacts with structural proteins and NS4A-2 K-4B to facilitate the production of infectious virus particles [11, 79]. Because of their critical roles in the DENV replication cycle, NS2B, NS3, and NS5 along with NS4B are the main focus to design new inhibitors for antiviral therapy against DENV and other related flaviviruses [80–83]. Assembled viruses are transported through the trans-Golgi network (TGN) where under acidic conditions, a cellular protease, furin, cleaves pre-M, allowing full maturation of infectious virions that will be finally released via exocytosis [84].

3. Dengue virus infection, epidemiology, and clinical features

Dengue is the arboviral infection with the highest disease incidence worldwide, with 2.5 billion people living in dengue-endemic tropical and subtropical regions [1, 85, 86]. In the last four decades, the geographical spread and intensity of dengue...
have grown dramatically around the world accompanied by the wide distribution of the two main vector mosquitoes, *Aedes aegypti* and *Aedes albopictus*, which today are fully adapted to human dwellings creating new opportunities not only for DENV but also for other arthropod-transmitted viruses (arboviruses) transmission, such as Zika virus (ZIKV) and chikungunya virus (CHIKV), within human populations. These features along with the continuous growing of urbanization, globalization, and the lack of effective mosquito control represent some of the critical factors that have contributed to the emergence and reemergence of mosquito-transmitted viruses around the world [48, 87, 88].

Infection with any of the four DENV serotypes results in a diverse range of symptoms going from mild undifferentiated fever to life-threatening manifestations, which are characterized by increased vascular permeability, hemorrhage, and shock [89] (Figure 1C). In 1997, the World Health Organization (WHO) classified symptomatic DENV infections into three categories and subcategories known as dengue fever (DF), dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF), and dengue shock syndrome (DSS). After an incubation period of 3–7 days, symptoms start suddenly and follow three phases: an initial febrile phase, a critical phase around the time of defervescence, and a spontaneous recovery phase [89]. Classical DF is an incapacitating disease that affects older children, adolescents, and adults, mainly characterized by the abrupt onset of fever (up to 40°C) and severe headache, accompanied by retro-orbital pain, myalgia, arthralgia, gastrointestinal discomfort, and transient rash [89]. In turn, DHF and DSS can rapidly deteriorate, progressing to hemorrhage with or without vascular leak after an early acute-onset febrile period, particularly during defervescence, where the symptoms are similar to those presented during classical DF. DHF and DSS are classified into four subcategories or grades (I–IV), where grades I and II (DHF) are represented by mild cases presenting some bleeding manifestations without shock (petechiae, purpura, ecchymosis, bruising, epistaxis, etc.), whereas III and IV (DSS) are more severe and accompanied by severe hemorrhagic manifestations and thrombocytopenia (platelets counts: <100,000 platelets/μL) and evidence of increased vascular permeability (ascites, pleural effusion, increased hematocrit concentrations, and severe abdominal pain) during a critical period, sometimes accompanied with a profound and prolonged shock that potentially leads to death [90]. In this critical stage, liver failure, myocarditis, and encephalopathy often occur with minimal associated plasma leakage [89]. In 2009, the WHO revised the classification system for dengue and established new guidelines that replaced the more complicated dengue fever/dengue hemorrhagic fever (DF/DHF) system to separate patients enduring severe disease from those with non-severe manifestations. This new guideline defined two new major entities—dengue and severe dengue—which encompasses a set of “warning signs” intended to help clinicians identify the patients likely to develop complications during the critical phase of the illness [89].

Currently, there is no effective and safe vaccine or FDA-approved specific antiviral drug options to combat dengue disease, with treatment being purely supportive [91]. Prevention or reduction of DENV transmission by implementing combined effective control strategies remains as the primary approach to be used to prevent DENV transmission within human populations [92]. With the majority of DENV infections being asymptomatic (70–80%), and most symptomatic infections not progressing to severe disease [3], the global distribution of dengue remains highly uncertain as the actual numbers of dengue cases are underreported and many cases are misclassified. One recent study estimate indicates that 390 million DENV infections occur annually with more than 500,000 cases of hospitalizations and more than 25,000 deaths (2.5% case fatality, annually) [1]. A different study estimated that 3.9 billion people living in 128 countries are at risk of being infected with dengue viruses [85]. These studies
demonstrate the worldwide expansion of the dengue disease and the establishment of an increasingly important infectious disease of global public health significance.

4. Dengue immunopathogenesis and severe disease: host and viral factors

The hallmark of severe dengue is the transient perturbation in the integrity of the endothelium lining the inner side of blood vessels as well as the alteration in the coagulation cascade leading to shock and severe hemorrhage manifestations [9, 89]. Increased vascular permeability in severe dengue results in decreased circulating plasma volume, haemoconcentration, and pleural and peritoneal effusions that result in severe life-threatening shock [93–96]. Numerous epidemiological pieces of evidence indicate that appearance of the life-threatening manifestations during severe dengue occurs shortly after the defervescence stage of dengue disease, when the peak of viremia passed, meaning that host innate and adaptive immune responses have cleared the virus from host tissues [97, 98]. At this time, a transient vascular leakage pathology is observed followed by a rapid recovery in association with the late febrile phase. This association led to the suggestion that the key biological mechanisms such as alterations on the vasculature that leads to the pathogenesis of clinical complications during DENV infection are rather functional than the structural changes in the endothelium and are primarily a consequence of short-lived biological mediators closely linked to the host immune responses [93–96].

Although many severe infections occur upon secondary encounters with heterologous DENV serotypes [9, 99], suggesting an immune-mediated process is involved, the multifactorial immunopathogenic process of DENV infection implies a complex interaction between distinct viral and host processes that sometimes leads to increased virus infection, exacerbated immune responses, and the appearance of life-threatening severe manifestations such as severe plasma leakage, hemorrhage, and organ failure. Higher virus pathogenicity (virulence), preexisting serotype cross-reactive antibodies, activation of DENV-infected immune cells [e.g., monocytes and mast cells (MCs)], T cell responses, activation of complement pathways, the potential infection of endothelial cells, and the new pathogenic roles of the secreted NS1 of DENV may work synergistically to induce the release of vasoactive cytokines which results in increased endothelial permeability causing vascular leakage and pleural effusion, which are still considered pathognomonic features of severe dengue that leads occasionally to shock and death [8, 9, 35, 96, 99–110]. In this section, we highlight in two parts I and II, the immunological events elicited by DENV infection, which have been suggested to play a key role in the development of severe dengue manifestations.

4.1 Dengue virus tropism and infection of immune cells

Numerous in vitro studies have shown that DENV is able to infect a variety of cell types including epithelial cells, endothelial cells, hepatocytes, muscle cells, dendritic cells, monocytes, B cells, and mast cells [65, 66, 111–117]. Several autopsies and ex vivo studies have found the presence of DENV antigens (e.g., envelope protein, NS3) in some tissues such as the skin, liver, spleen, lymph node, kidney, bone marrow, lung, thymus, and brain [56, 67, 68, 118–122]. However, infectious virus particles have not always been isolated from all these organs but only from the liver and peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs), suggesting that: (a) the presence of DENV antigens such as the structural proteins E, pre-M, and C in several organs may not always be associated with the evidence of productive viral infection and severe organ pathology and (b) the immune cells and liver may be the main targets for DENV replication during the dengue disease [67].
In animal models such as the alpha/beta (IFN-α/β)-deficient mice (Ifnar<sup>−/−</sup>) and nonhuman primates, DENV has been recovered from the spleen, liver, peripheral lymph nodes, and the central nervous system [123–127]. However, the absence of an appropriate animal disease model has largely hampered with the understanding of the role played by DENV tropism in vivo. Sustained viral replication and severe manifestations have been observed in Ifnar<sup>−/−</sup> mice after infection with DENV, which gives a clear advantage to study DENV pathogenesis in vivo, but the absence of intact IFN signaling is a limitation that must be considered when interpreting data [128].

The fact that DENV can infect many mammalian and insect cell types in vitro and in vivo suggest there are different molecules or cellular routes that might be controlling virus attachment and internalization, resulting in productive infection [63]. Numerous studies have shown that C-type lectins including DC-SIGN (CD209) and C-type lectin domain family 5, member A (CLEC5A) expressed on dendritic cells and macrophages act as cellular receptors for DENV [129–131]. Other extensively studied DC receptors are the mannose receptor (MR), Langerins, Fc-receptors, TIM3, TIM4, and AXL [63, 65, 132, 133]. Contrary to the DC-SIGN that may primarily function as a viral attachment factor, DENV binding to CLEC5A (C-type lectin domain family 5, member A), highly expressed by monocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, and dendritic cells, has been shown to induce the production of antiviral and pro-inflammatory cytokines suggesting that this C-type lectin may act as a cognate receptor for dengue virion [131, 134]. These cytokines include type I IFNs and chemotactic factors such as migration inhibition factor (MIF), monocyte chemotactic factor (MCP), and IL-8 [102, 134]. DENV infection of DCs also induces the production of matrix metalloproteinases (MPPs), MMP-2 and MMP-9, which induces migration of DCs to lymph nodes where virus further replicates before it disseminates into the blood circulation [135]. In the skin, DENV also infects mast cells that can be activated leading to degranulation and increased secretion of various inflammatory cytokines (IL-1, IL-6, TNF-α, and IFN-α), chemokines (CCL5, CXCL12, and CX3CL1), and chymase, the latter being a protease found circulating at high levels in the blood of dengue patients, suggesting a potential role in the development of severe dengue that contributes to vascular leakage [115, 136–140]. All these innate immune processes together lead to an antiviral state in nearby cells, generating an inflammatory response and recruitment of natural killer (NK) cells to combat DENV infection [54, 141].

Along with DCs, monocytes and macrophages are also the primary targets of DENV infection [142, 143]. In lymphoid and nonlymphoid tissues, macrophages are considered the primary reservoirs of DENV after its dissemination from the skin [144]. Macrophages susceptible to DENV have been found in different organs in the mouse models or human autopsies, namely, Kupfer cells in the liver, alveolar macrophages in the lungs, dermal macrophages, microglial cells (brain and spinal cord), and monocytes in the peripheral blood [118, 120, 122, 145–147]. Comparable to DENV infection of DCs, DENV can use an array of cell surface receptors to infect monocytes and macrophages, including mannose receptor (CD205), CD14-associated protein, heat shock proteins (HSP70/HSP90), DC-SIGN (CD209), CD300a, AXL, TIM4, PD1, and the Fc receptors, particularly FcγRI (CD64) and FcγRII (CD32, 63). These two Fc-Rs play major roles in enhancing DENV infection of monocytes and macrophages, particularly during secondary infections [148–151].

Other populations of immune cells including NK cells can also be activated during DENV infection, particularly in patients with DHF compared to those with DF [141, 152, 153]. Additionally, B cells and T cells have been studied to test permissiveness to DENV, but these studies have resulted in contradictory results [154–156]. In vitro studies using B cell and T cell lines (e.g., Raji cells, Daudi, and Jurkat) and primary B cells derived from healthy human peripheral blood mononuclear cells.
(PBMCs) have revealed the potential role of these cells in DENV replication, both in presence and absence of heterologous antibodies [67, 155, 157–159]. Additional studies using a humanized mouse model found that DENV infected both B and T cells accompanied by an important production of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-6 and TNF-α, like monocytes and macrophages [160]. Despite this evidence, the role of lymphoid cells such as B and T cells in DENV tropism and replication needs further exploration.

4.2 DENV infection and the host innate immune responses

Although plasma leakage in severe dengue occurs at the end of the acute illness, there is substantial evidence that the pathophysiologic processes start at the earliest stages of DENV infection [95, 96]. Introduction of DENV particles along with mosquito saliva triggers a variety of host innate immune responses leading to the production of antiviral and pro-inflammatory cytokines mostly from the immune cells exposed to DENV [57, 62, 138]. At this stage, innate immune cells are the first to respond to infection through stimulation of patterns recognition receptors (PRRs) recognizing pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) as well as endogenous molecules released from damaged cells, termed damage-associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) [161, 162]. PRR recognition triggers the production of cytokines and chemokines, which induces a local antiviral state [54, 55]. This local innate response could potentially play an important role in modulating local viremia and virus dissemination by recruiting susceptible target cells for DENV infection at the inoculation site [57, 62, 144].

PRRs include transmembrane proteins such as the Toll-like receptors (TLRs) and C-type lectin receptors (CLRs) as well as cytoplasmic proteins such as the retinoic acid-inducible gene (RIG)-I-like receptors (RLRs) and NOD-like receptors (NLRs) [161]. These are an essential part of the innate immune response against the virus, sensing viral replication in the cytoplasm [161, 163]. The PRRs that are associated with DENV recognition after infecting target cells are the cytoplasmic retinoic acid-inducible gene I (RIG-I) and the melanoma differentiation-associated protein 5 (MDA5) and the endosomal Toll-like receptor 3 (TLR3) and TLR7 [164–166]. Recognition of DENV RNA by TLR-3 results in the production of type I IFN and chemokines such as IL-8 via sensing of phosphate-containing RNA and long double-stranded RNA (dsRNA) in the cytoplasm or inside endosomal compartments [167, 168]. DENV infection in nonhuman primates demonstrated that the administration of TLR-3 and TLR7 agonists resulted in significantly decreased viral replication and increased production of pro-inflammatory chemokines as well as increased production of antibodies targeting DENV [169], indicating a protective role for TLRs during DENV infection.

Additional pathways such as the cyclic GMP-AM synthase (cGAS), a DNA-sensor pathway which triggers the simulator of IFN genes (STING) pathway are also activated during DENV infection leading to the production of type I IFN and activation of TLRs (TLR9), an endosomal PRR that recognizes cytoplasmic DNA originated from mitochondrial damage [170–172]. In addition to type I IFN production, small RNAs such as micro RNAs (miRNA) and the complement system are important components of the innate immune response against viral infections [173, 174]. miRNAs are processed by and interact with the proteins in the RNA interference (RNAi) pathway, such as Dicer, Drosha, Arg01, and Arg02 [175]. RNA interference (RNAi) is an important antiviral defense response in plants and invertebrates [176]. In DENV infection, knockdown of these components resulted in increased DENV replication in mammalian cells, suggesting that the RNAi pathways may play important roles in the cellular anti-DENV responses [177, 178]. Additional evidence showed that DENV can interfere with RNAi pathways in human hepatocytes cells via NS4B and subgenomic flavivirus RNA (sgRNA) interactions with Dicer’s ability to process small
RNA in vitro [179]. sfRNAs are abundant noncoding RNA sequences derived from the stalling of the host 5′-3′ exoribonuclease XRNI/Pacman in the 3′-untranslated regions (3′UTRs) of the viral genomic RNA [180]. sfRNAs have been shown to block exonuclease XRNI, increasing the overall messenger RNA stability within the host cell which may also benefit the viral RNA [181–183]. However, evidence for RNAi contribution to mammalian antiviral defense are few and still controversial [179].

miRNAs have been shown to regulate TLRs and IL-1 signaling pathways in response to viral infection, which provides control of host innate immune responses [184]. So far, there have been reported several cellular miRNAs (miRNAome) that are modulated during DENV infection of mammalian cells, mainly related to the regulation of IFN-β signaling pathways [185–188]. Some of these miRNAs have been proposed to be used as biomarkers in dengue-infected patients [189, 190]. Interestingly, modulation of microRNA expressions have been also described upon DENV infection of insect cells (e.g., C6/36 cells) as well as adult vector mosquitoes such as Aedes albopictus [191–193], suggesting that DENV might also regulate the activation of these antiviral RNAi pathways in vector mosquitoes, potentially avoiding viral clearance that promotes viral replication and transmission [194]. Despite RNAi constituting an evolutionarily conserved phenomenon of the mosquito–innate immune response to virus infections [195], viruses have found ways to subvert the RNAi-mediated antiviral responses in vector mosquitoes to manipulate miRNA profiles to their own benefit [196].

Regarding the complement system, this multifaceted pathway has been shown to limit DENV replication; however, excessively activated complement components have been also associated with disease severity [197]. The complement cascade constitutes an integral component of the immune system, composed of many plasma proteins that once activated can initiate a proteolytic cascade, resulting in the release of chemokines, facilitation of particle phagocytosis via opsonization, and deposition of the cell-killing membrane attack complex (MAC) designed to target and destroy foreign pathogens such as viruses [174]. Activation of the complement system occurs via three convergent pathways: the classical, the lectin, and the alternative pathways [174]. In vitro experiments showed that DENV replication enhances complement activation [197–199]. Additionally, clinical and in vivo studies have shown that excessive consumption of some complement components (e.g., C3, C4, and factor B) contributed to severe manifestations by increasing the levels of complement-activated products which enhance vascular permeability to cause severe dengue disease [9, 108, 109, 200]. In fact, increased circulation of anaphylatoxins (C3a, C4a, and C5a) in the blood of severe patients correlated with symptoms of vascular leakage [109, 200]. In autopsy studies from children who died of acute severe dengue manifestations (DHF/DSS), augmented deposition of complement components from both classical and alternative pathways were found on hepatocytes which results in severe liver damage and death [120]. Altogether, these data support the hypothesis that exacerbated complement activation influences dengue disease immunopathogenesis leading to disease severity [197].

### 4.3 DENV subversion of antiviral responses

The first barrier to overcome for successful viral infection is the rapid innate immune responses of the host, including type I IFNs, inflammatory cytokines, complement responses, NK cells, apoptosis, and autophagy [201, 202]. These innate immune responses are meant to defeat viral infections by engaging specific viral components (e.g., RNA and DNA) leading to activation of immediate protective defense mechanisms such as the rapid recognition of PAMP in nonimmune and innate immune cells [161]. IFN production is a key goal of PRR activation for viral pathogens, and DENV is highly susceptible to effective induction of both type
I (IFN-α/β) and type II (IFN-γ) interferons [124, 203, 204]. Accordingly, in vivo DENV infection of wild-type mice causes little disease; in contrast, in mice lacking of type I IFN receptors (IFANR), DENV infection causes mortality [126]. Secreted type I IFNs trigger autocrine and paracrine induction of cellular antiviral responses and warning signals to noninfected adjacent cells, such as the expression of the interferon stimulated genes (ISGs) [205, 206]. ISGs have been shown to exert numerous antiviral effector functions, many of which are still not fully described [207]. Upon DENV infection, RLRs are activated to trigger antiviral responses based on the induction of type I IFN and pro-inflammatory cytokines [208]. The binding of type I IFN with its receptor activates multi-subsets of ISGs through JAK-STAT signaling which amplifies and sustains the initial antiviral responses [207, 209, 210]. However, ISGs can also be activated in IFN-independent pathways during DENV infection [211]. DENV infection has been shown to trigger the transcriptional activation of ISGs in vivo and in vitro [208, 212–215]. For instance, a tripartite motif (TRIM) protein encoding gene, TRIM69, is induced during DENV infection as an ISG. TRIM69 restricts DENV replication by direct interaction with DENV NS3, which mediates its polyubiquitination and degradation in a process called ISGylation [216]. In addition to ISGs, activation of the transcription factors IRF-3, IRF-7, and NF-κB through either the TLR or RIG-I/MDA5 pathways results in the production of type I IFN which contributes to anti-DENV immunity [217, 218]. IRF-3 and IRF-7 are part of the interferon regulatory factors (IRFs) considered the master regulators of the type I IFN production that contribute to the suppression of viruses [219]. Due to the central importance in viral defense, many pathogenic viruses, including DENV, have evolved mechanisms to suppress IRF signaling. In the case of DENV, the nonstructural proteins restrict IRF3 and IFN response which facilitate DENV replication and virulence [220].

In recent years, considerable advances have been made toward understanding of the specific IFN antagonistic mechanisms evolved by DENV to subvert these intracellular antiviral mechanisms and directly inhibiting these cellular signaling cascades, which results in enhanced virus infection, pathogenesis, and disease [167, 221]. This is supported by the increased susceptibility of mice deficient in IFN-α/β and IFN-γ receptors (AG129) to DENV infection as compared to wild-type mice [124, 126, 127]. Although IFN response is antagonized in mouse, human cells still induce high levels of IFN production in response to DENV, so this pathway is not entirely abrogated in humans during infection [203, 222]. Accordingly, humans infected with DENV have high levels of circulating of type I and type II IFNs [223–225]. Strong IFN-α responses have shown to correlate with milder dengue clinical conditions [226]. Similarly, the levels of the dengue-related gene expression of ISGs have been reported to be lower in patients with more severe disease [227–229] suggesting that DENV may abrogate IFN responses to facilitate viral infection which results in severe manifestations.

From the viral perspective, DENV uses its nonstructural (NS) proteins to block and inhibit the antiviral sensing pathways in infected cells. NS2a, NS3, NS4a, NS4b, and NS5 prevent the virus from being sensed by RIG-I, inhibiting IFNβ induction [230–233]. NS2a, NS4a, and NS4b complex inhibits STAT1 signaling after IFNAR activation in vitro [233, 234]. NS5 induces proteasomal degradation of STAT2 which inhibits IFN-mediated response [230]. NS2b induces degradation of cGAS, which prevents DNA sensing resulting from mitochondrial damage [170, 171, 235]. The NS2b/3 protease complex cleaves STING which inhibits IFN production [236]. This phenomenon has been shown to occur in human but not nonhuman primates, suggesting that DENV may have evolved to increase viral titers in human populations, while maintaining decreased titers and pathogenicity in rare animals would serve as a sustainable reservoir in nature [237].

In addition to NS proteins, flavivirus sfRNAs have been described to regulate the innate immune responses via binding and inactivating RNA-binding proteins which are crucial for innate immunity [180, 238]. DENV 3’UTRs possess RNA structures
necessary for viral genome cyclization, viral RNA synthesis, translation, and replication [239]. sfRNAs regulate the pathogenicity in both mammalian and mosquito cells after interacting with proteins such as TRIM25 to inhibit RIG-I signaling and translation of ISGs [73, 240, 241]. Interestingly, reduced IFN responses have been found during DENV outbreaks where the infecting DENV serotype produced greater levels of sfRNA than the less pathogenic strains [100, 240]. Thus, high levels of sfRNAs may cause an epidemiological fitness of DENV, which results in lower stimulation of RIG-IMDAn RNA sensors and reduced production of IFN, causing higher viremia levels that could be translated in more infections and severe diseases.

On the other hand, DENV utilizes the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) of host cells for replication and assembly. In this process, the ER undergoes extensive rearrangements and expansion that requires de novo synthesis of viral proteins [71]. Accumulation of unfolded proteins in the ER lumen leads to an unfolded protein response (UPR), a pro-survival cellular reaction induced in response to DENV-mediated ER stress [242, 243]. DENV has evolved to manipulate the UPR to cope with ER stress which hijacks the host cell machinery to evade the host immunity, facilitating viral replication [112]. Distinct in vitro and in vivo studies have shown that DENV induced ER stress and manipulates the host metabolism and protein production by increasing the autophagy (lipophagy) activity, viral replication, and pathogenesis through UPR signaling pathways [244–247]. Autophagy is the lysosomal degradation of cytoplasmic contents, which results in the recycling of cellular macromolecules as well as the activation of cellular host responses to starvation or stress [248]. Autophagy has been implicated as an innate immune response that would engulf and destroy pathogens by degrading cytosolic contents [249, 250]. In DENV infection, functional autophagy components have been shown to either promote or restrict viral RNA replication and virus production [251–253]. However, DENV has found ways of preventing autophagic processing and degradation of viral components [254, 255]. Several studies have linked DENV induction of autophagy to the regulation of lipid metabolism, leading to increased degradation of lipid droplets that produces more fatty acid material important for viral replication [247]. In this process, the NS3, NS1, and C proteins of DENV have been found to increase fatty acid biosynthesis and recruitment of lipid droplets to the DENV replication complex, facilitating viral particle assembly [256, 257].

Furthermore, several studies have shown that lipids and lipoproteins play a role in modifying DENV infectivity in both mammalian and insect cells in vitro [258, 259]. Modulation of cholesterol levels in the host cells facilitates viral entry, replication, virus assembly, and control type I IFN response [260, 261]. This modulation involves the regulation of cholesterol levels, expression of cholesterol receptors as well as changes in cholesterol synthesis related to important modifications in the cellular metabolism [114, 262, 263]. Interestingly, clinical studies have found that levels of total serum cholesterol and LDL-C levels are modulated over the course of dengue illness, with generally lower levels associated with increased dengue severity [264–266]. In general, low cholesterol levels have been associated with critical illness related to sepsis and vascular disorders [267]. Thus, the association of cholesterol with severe dengue outcome may be an important indicator of the pathophysiology of DHF/DSS.

About the complement pathway, DENV has evolved strategies to limit recognition and activation of the complement cascade [108, 165]. NS1 is the only flavivirus protein that is secreted by infected cells and has been shown to modulate the complement pathway [14, 268]. NS1 promotes efficient degradation of C4 to C4b to protect DENV from complement-dependent neutralization [13, 269]. The NS1 protein of DENV and other flaviviruses such as WNV NS1 interacts with some components of the alternative complement pathway such as the C3bBb convertase, which limits the formation of C5b-9 membrane attack complex (MAC) [268, 270]. Additional studies have found that NS1 proteins from DENV, WNV, and YFV all attenuate classical and
lectin pathway activation by directly interacting with C4, which reduces C4b deposition and C3 convertase (C4b2a) activity [13, 271]. Also, anti-NS1 antibodies have been shown to induce complement consumption and C5b-9 generation [272]. Overall, through protein-to-protein interactions between the viral and host factors involved in antiviral responses and careful manipulation of cellular processes, such as ER expansion, autophagy and lipid metabolism, and complement pathways, DENV hijacks many host antiviral responses to facilitate virus replication leading to pathogenesis.

5. Concluding remarks (Part I)

Dengue is the most prevalent arboviral disease transmitted by mosquitoes, which poses an enormous burden to the public health systems worldwide as more than 40% of the world population is at risk of infection. The infection with any of the four DENV serotypes (DENV1–4) can lead to a wide spectrum of clinical manifestations that range from the asymptomatic or inapparent to moderate flu-like symptoms, known as dengue fever (DF), and life-threatening manifestations identified by the WHO, known as the dengue hemorrhagic fever and dengue shock syndrome (DHF/DSS), also known as severe dengue, with or without warning signs. In endemic areas where multiple DENV serotypes can seasonally circulate, distinct epidemiological studies have demonstrated that an individual human being can be exposed to sequential infections with distinct DENV serotypes, which poses a risk of developing severe manifestations such as DHF/DSS. This phenomenon has been attributed to the potential enhancement activity that the preexisting antibody response elicited from a previous infection with one serotype (e.g., DENV-1) may have on the infection with a different serotype (e.g., DENV-2). This process leads to an increased viral burden that triggers a series of immunological and cellular events (e.g., ADE, cytokine storm, skewed T cell responses, and complement pathways), which despite being intended to prevent the invasion and infection of the infecting viral pathogens, can induce host tissue damage leading to pathology and disease. The cellular and molecular mechanisms involved in this phenomenon will be explained in more detail in the Part II of this chapter entitled “Adaptive immune response and NS1 pathogenesis.”

As an arthropod-transmitted virus (arbovirus), DENV is initially transmitted by an infected vector mosquito in which the virus has already been amplified after replication in its distinct tissues, starting at the midgut to finalize in the salivary glands, where a new transmission cycle begins after blood feeding from a new host (Figure 2). Following inoculation from the bite of an infected mosquito, viruses undergo replication in the local tissues such as the skin. In the skin, infectious virus particles along with mosquito saliva components including proteases and immunomodulatory proteins among others are sown in the epidermis and dermis, leading to an activation of a cascade of events including the recruitment of skin resident cells (e.g., Langerhans cells, mast cells, and keratinocytes) and new cells (e.g., T cells and neutrophils) into the site of the infection that later serve as viral targets for viral replication. After infection of target cells, sensing of viral products (e.g., PAMPs and DAMPs) results in the activation of innate immune responses (e.g., type I IFN chemokines), the first line of defense, which establishes inflammatory and antiviral states intended to prevent the virus to colonize and to replicate in the skin; however, DENV has elaborated several pathogenic mechanisms to hijack these responses and escape from the normal immune system processing, which results in its dissemination and seeds into the lymph nodes. There, DENV further replicates in monocyte lineage cells, resulting in a primary viremia after its systemic dissemination through the circulatory bloodstream, which results in the subsequent infection of peripheral tissues such as the liver, spleen, and kidney. Overall, the skin represents not only the first line of
defense against arboviruses but also the main place where viruses have learned to evade the host immune responses leading to invasion and dissemination toward the establishment of systemic host infection, which will potentially assure subsequent virus transmission into a new host. In this Part I of the chapter entitled “Dengue virus tropism, host innate immune responses, and subversion of antiviral responses,” we discussed the distinct features of DENV as well as the biological and molecular mechanisms that can tilt the balance to either a local viral infection and dissemination through the skin or to the control and prevention of viral infection by the innate and adaptive immune responses at the site of the infection. Thus, the immunopathogenesis of arboviruses such as DENV in the skin is a critical step and must be a focus of future studies intended to reduce/block arthropod-borne transmission into humans.

Acknowledgements

The authors would like to acknowledge to the Canadian Institutes of Health Research and the International Development Research Centre (Projects 108412 and 109071-002) and the Fondo Mixto CONACYT-Gobierno del Estado de Yucatan (Project YUC-2017-03-01-556).

Author details

Henry Puerta-Guardo1*, Scott B. Biering2, Eva Harris2, Norma Pavia-Ruz3, Gonzalo Vázquez-Prokopec4, Guadalupe Ayora-Talavera3 and Pablo Manrique-Saide1

1 Collaborative Unit for Entomological Bioassays and Laboratory for Biological Control of Aedes aegypti, Campus of Biological and Agricultural Sciences, Universidad Autonoma de Yucatan, Merida, Yucatan, Mexico

2 Division of Infectious Diseases and Vaccinology, School of Public Health, University of California, Berkeley, USA

3 Centro de Investigaciones Regionales Dr. Hideyo Noguchi, Universidad Autonoma de Yucatan, Merida, Yucatan, Mexico

4 Department of Environmental Sciences, Emory University, Atlanta, Georgia, USA

*Address all correspondence to: hpuertaguardo@gmail.com

IntechOpen

© 2020 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.
References


[16] Glasner DR, Puerta-Guardo H, Beatty PR, Harris E. The good, the bad,


[54] Rathore APS, St John AL. Immune responses to dengue virus in the skin. Open Biology. 2018;8(8):180087


[65] Cruz-Oliveira C, Freire JM, Conceicao TM, Higa LM, Castanho MA, Da Poian AT. Receptors and routes of dengue virus entry into the host cells. FEMS Microbiology Reviews. 2015;39(2):155-170


[93] Trung DT, Wills B. Systemic vascular leakage associated with dengue infections—The clinical perspective. Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology. 2010;338:57-66


and endothelial biomarkers with clinical outcome in dengue: An observational study. The Journal of Infectious Diseases 2016;214(5):697-706


[111] Diamond MS, Edgil D, Roberts TG, Lu B, Harris E. Infection of human cells by dengue virus is modulated by

[112] Begum F, Das S, Mukherjee D, Ray U. Hijacking the host immune cells by dengue virus: Molecular interplay of receptors and dengue virus envelope. Microorganisms. 2019;7(9):323


[128] Zellweger RM, Shresta S. Mouse models to study dengue virus immunology and pathogenesis. Frontiers in Immunology. 2014;5:151


[141] Zimmer CL, Cornillet M, Soral-Riera C, Cheung KW, Ivarsson MA, Lim MQ, et al. NK cells are activated and primed for skin-homing during acute dengue virus infection in
Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective


[144] Schmid MA, Harris E. Monocyte recruitment to the dermis and differentiation to dendritic cells increases the targets for dengue virus replication. PLOS Pathogens. 2014;10(12):e1004541


[149] Littaua R, Kurane I, Ennis FA. Human IgG Fc receptor II mediates antibody-dependent enhancement of dengue virus infection. Journal of Immunology. 1990;144(8):3183-3186


[176] Ding SW, Voinnet O. Antiviral immunity directed by small RNAs. Cell. 2007;130(3):413-426


[195] Blair CD. Mosquito RNAi is the major innate immune pathway controlling arbovirus infection and transmission. Future Microbiology. 2011;6(3):265-277


[205] Perry AK, Chen G, Zheng D, Tang H, Cheng G. The host type I interferon response to viral and


[220] Dalrymple NA, Cimica V, Mackow ER. Dengue virus NS proteins inhibit RIG-I/MAVS Signaling by blocking TBK1/IRF3 phosphorylation: Dengue virus serotype 1 NS4A is a unique interferon-regulating
virulence determinant. MBio. 2015;6(3):e00553-15

[221] Modhiran N, Kalayanarooj S, Ubol S. Subversion of innate defenses by the interplay between DENV and pre-existing enhancing antibodies: TLRs signaling collapse. PLOS Neglected Tropical Diseases. 2010;4(12):e924


[262] Osuna-Ramos JF, Reyes-Ruiz JM, Del Angel RM. The role of host cholesterol during Flavivirus infection. Frontiers in Cellular and Infection Microbiology. 2018;8:388


[265] Lima WG, Souza NA, Fernandes SOA, Cardoso VN, Godoi IP. Serum lipid profile as a predictor of dengue severity: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Reviews in Medical Virology. 2019;29(5):e2056


[267] Biswas HH, Gordon A, Nuñez A, Perez MA, Balmaseda A, Harris E. Lower low-density lipoprotein cholesterol levels are associated with severe dengue outcome. PLOS Neglected Tropical Diseases. 2015;9(9):e0003904-e


Schlesinger JJ. Flavivirus nonstructural protein NS1: Complementary surprises. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences. 2006;103(50):18879

Chapter 5

Dengue Immunopathogenesis: A Crosstalk between Host and Viral Factors Leading to Disease: PART II - DENV Infection, Adaptive Immune Responses, and NS1 Pathogenesis

Henry Puerta-Guardo, Scott B. Biering, Eva Harris, Norma Pavia-Ruz, Gonzalo Vázquez-Prokopec, Guadalupe Ayora-Talavera and Pablo Manrique-Saide

Abstract

Severe disease is associated with serial infection with DENV of different serotypes. Thus, primary DENV infections normally cause asymptomatic infections, and secondary heterotypic infections with a new DENV serotype potentially increase the risks of developing severe disease. Despite many proposed hypotheses trying to explain it, the exact immunological mechanism leading to severe dengue disease is unknown. In turn, severe manifestations are believed to be a consequence of the combinations of many immunopathogenic mechanisms involving viral and host factors leading to increased pathogenesis and disease. Of these mechanisms, the adaptive immune response has been proposed to play a critical role in the development of severe dengue manifestations. This includes the effect of non-neutralizing but enhancing antibodies produced during primary infections, which results in enhanced-DENV infection of Fc-γ-receptor-expressing cells (e.g. monocytes and macrophages) during DENV heterotypic exposure in a phenomenon called antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE); the increased activation of memory T cells during secondary infections, which has low affinity for the current infecting serotype and high affinity for a past infection with a different serotype known as the original antigenic sin; the unbalanced production of pro-inflammatory cytokines that have a direct effect on vascular endothelial cells resulting in plasma leak in a phenomenon known as cytokine storm; and the excessive activation of the complement system that causes exacerbated inflammatory responses, increasing disease severity. In addition to the adaptive immune responses, a secreted viral factor known as the nonstructural protein 1 (NS1) has been recently proposed as the missing corner piece of the DENV pathogenesis influencing disease. This Part II of the chapter will discuss the interplay between the distinct host adaptive immune responses and viral factors that together contribute to the development of DENV pathogenesis and severe disease.
Keywords: dengue, immunopathogenesis, dengue shock syndrome, severe dengue, adaptive immune response, antibody response, ADE, cytokine storm, T cells, complement system, viral toxin, NS1, endothelial dysfunction, vascular leak

1. Dengue immunopathogenesis and severe disease: host and viral factors

As discussed in Part I of this chapter, severe dengue is mainly characterized by the altered endothelial function in blood vessels and the disruption of the coagulation cascade that results in hypotension, shock, and severe hemorrhage manifestations [1, 2]. As the epidemiology of dengue indicates that appearance of severe manifestations occurs when the peak of viremia has passed, the key biological mechanisms leading to the pathogenesis of clinical complications during DENV infection, are believed to involve the activity of short-lived biological mediators closely linked to host innate and adaptive immune responses [3–6].

This Part II of the dengue immunopathogenesis section will address the multifactorial immunopathogenic process of DENV infection from the perspective of the pre-existing serotype cross-reactive antibodies, the hyperactivation of DENV-infected immune cells (e.g. monocytes, mast cells) leading to increased cytokine production, the role of T cell responses, the activation of complement pathways, and the new pathogenic roles of the secreted NS1 of DENV that may act together to occasionally cause severe dengue manifestations followed by shock and potentially death [1, 6–21].

1.1 Antibody response to DENV infection

The DENV complex refers to a group of four evolutionarily distinct, but antigenically and genetically related DENV serotypes (DENV-1 to DENV-4) [22]. During dengue disease, the humoral immune response is vital for controlling DENV virus infection and for the development of acquired immunity [10]. Neutralizing antibodies against the four serotypes are critical components of the protective immune response [23]. In this sense, during primary DENV infection, it is expected that a neutralizing type-specific antibody response should provide long-term protection against the primary DENV infecting serotype, but only transient protection against other DENV serotypes (cross-reactive antibodies) (See Figure 1 Part I). Infection with a primary serotype is thought to induce lifelong immunity that protects against re-infection with the same serotype (homotypic) [7, 23]. However, homotypic DENV infections have been found in symptomatic dengue cases in a community-based prospective cohort study suggesting that recurrent DENV infections, particularly in endemic areas can occur in patients over time [24]. After subsequent infection with a different serotype (secondary infection), the neutralizing antibody response becomes broadly neutralizing and is thought to reduce the incidence of severe disease [25] (See Figure 1C, Part I). In fact, individuals with higher cross-reactive neutralizing antibody titers originated from pre-infection correlates with reduced likelihood of symptomatic secondary infection [23]. However, numerous studies worldwide involving human infections during dengue epidemics (e.g. hospitalized cases) or multiple epidemiological studies from prospective cohorts strongly support the heterotypic secondary DENV infection, defined as two or more sequential infections by different serotypes, as the epidemiologic greatest risk factor for developing severe dengue disease [17, 26–29].

Antibody responses during DENV infection are mainly directed against the envelope protein (E), the major structural protein of the virion, and the dominant
Antigenic target for DENV neutralizing antibodies during natural infection, thus
the focus of vaccine candidates design [30–32]. Antibodies specific for DENV
proteins can mediate a wide range of functions \textit{in vitro} [10]. They can neutralize
DENV infection by direct hindering of virus-receptor interactions, blocking viral
fusion with the endosomal membrane within host cells, viral clearance in a Fc-
receptor dependent manner, lysis of virus infected cells via complement activation,
and antibody dependent cell cytotoxicity (ADCC) of infected cells [33] (Figure 1).
The E glycoprotein is composed of three structural domains (DI, DII, DIII), and
the most extensive characterization of B cell epitopes has been conducted against
them [34]. Neutralizing antibodies against the E protein of DENV include antibod-
ies to nearly all the epitopes [35]. However, during the natural course of infection,
the serological response to the E glycoprotein is highly serotype cross-reactive and
predominantly targets epitopes containing highly conserved residues, for instance,
the fusion loop of the domain II [31]. In addition, high-avidity and highly neutraliz-
ing antibodies against DENV, bind to domain III (DIII) of the E glycoprotein, which
is implicated in DENV binding to its cognate receptor [36, 37]. These antibodies
appear to be most effective at providing protection from infection and/or disease
[38–40]. However, with an ~60% amino acid divergence between the E glycopro-
teins of all four DENV serotypes, immunity to one serotype usually does not confer
long-lasting cross-protective immunity to the other serotypes [41]. A mature DENV
particle contains 180 copies of the E protein covering the surface of the virion
in either dimeric or trimeric (pre-fusion) conformations [42]. Neutralization is
estimated to require a minimum occupancy of ~30 epitope sites per virion [34].
This may be attributed to the dense arrangement of E glycoproteins on the virion
surface which has shown to be important for antigenicity, as many potently neutral-
izing human antibodies against flaviviruses that target either hidden cryptic or
quaternary epitopes extent through multiple E proteins [43–47].

On the other hand, the adaptive immune response during DENV infection can
also generate antibodies against pre-M proteins which are highly serotype cross-
reactive [48]. Despite this high cross-reactivity, anti-pre-M antibodies rarely neu-
tralize DENV infection even at high concentrations [48]. The pre-M protein forms
a heterodimer with the E protein, and it gets cleaved by host cell-expressed furin
during the final stage of virion maturation before egress [42]. The cleavage of pre-M
is required for the activation of flavivirus infectivity, including DENV [49]. In the
mature virion, the remaining M protein fragment is completely hidden by the E pro-
tein dimers which makes it inaccessible to antibody binding [34]. Therefore, matura-
tion state of the virion matters and may influence the interaction between immature
virus particles and anti-pre-M antibodies leading to neutralization or enhancement of
the infection (Figure 1). The potential role of anti-E or pre-M antibodies in increas-
ing DENV infection and pathogenesis will be further discussed later in this chapter.

Antibody responses in DENV infection can be also directed against several non-
structural proteins such as NS1, NS3, and NS5 as found in sera collected from DENV
infected patients [50, 51]. These antibody responses have been mainly detected
during secondary cases which open the possibility of implementing it in early
diagnostic assays of DENV infection [51, 52]. NS3 (viral helicase/protease) and NS5
(virus RNA dependent polymerase) localize exclusively within virus-infected cells,
but cell lysis owing to viral cytopathic effect or immune cell-mediated lysis may
make these proteins accessible for binding to B cell receptors, inducing an antibody
response [40, 52]. In this same line of interest, T cells may play an important role in
the immune response against DENV nonstructural proteins. This topic will be later
discussed in this chapter. On the other hand, the NS1 protein is the only flavivirus
glycoprotein secreted by infected cells [53]. NS1 forms a multimeric structures
either expressed on the surface of infected cells (dimer) or released as a soluble
Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

Figure 1.
The supercomplex interplay of the immunopathogenic mechanisms triggered by systemic DENV infection leading to disease. The DENV complex is composed by four serotypes [1–4], and a primary infection with any of these serotypes triggers an adaptive immune response that results in the generation of neutralizing antibodies mainly directed against the infecting serotype, for instance, DENV-1 (here in yellow) (see also Figure 1c, Part I).

When the host is re-exposed to the same DENV serotype as the one from the primary infection (homotypic infection), the neutralizing antibodies generated during the first encounter prevent APCs to be infected [2]. During the DENV replication cycle, right before virus exocytosis of the infected cell, the newly assembled virus particles suffer a final processing step known as the ‘maturation state’ of the virion, in which the pre-M state (at the virion surface) is converted to the mature M state (in the virion interior). During the DENV replication cycle, the newly assembled virus particles suffer a final processing step known as the ‘maturation state’ of the virion, in which the pre-M state (at the virion surface) is converted to the mature M state (in the virion interior).

Importantly, ADE can be also modulated by the structural heterogeneity of the DENV particles (maturation state) [4]. During the DENV replication cycle, right before virus exocytosis of the infected cell, the newly assembled virus particles suffer a final processing step known as the ‘maturation state’ of the virion, in which the pre-M protein is cleaved by the cellular protease, furin. Insufficient furin activity leads to the release of viral particles containing a wide variety of pre-M/E protein complex known as partially mature virions [4]. Although immature and partially mature DENV viral particles are unable to infect cells via its cognate receptor, they can use the ADE mechanism as a way to infect FcR-bearing cells which results in increased viral production (high virus yield) and increased secretion of cytokines and chemokines and other soluble components with vasoactive and pro-inflammatory activities in a process known as the ‘cytokine storm’. [5] The term ‘cytokine storm’ is referred to the
exacerbated and unbalanced production of cytokines and chemokines which exert many effector functions including antiviral response and inflammation. Many of these components pose some vasoactive activities which alter the homeostasis of mostly all biological barriers including the microvascular endothelium, leading to a phenomenon called vascular leak (hereafter, ‘leak’), a consequence of the increased endothelial cell (EC) permeability, and a hallmark of severe dengue disease [6]. The homeostasis of the endothelial barrier is mainly maintained by two structures: a) the endothelial glycocalyx layer (EGL), a network of membrane-bound glycosaminoglycans (e.g. heparan sulfate [HS]), hyaluronic acid [HA], chondroitin sulfate [CS]), and proteoglycans (e.g. syndecan-1, perlecain, glypican), covering the endothelium luminally and playing critical roles in vascular physiology and pathology, including mechanotransduction, hemostasis, signaling, and blood cell-endothelial interactions, and b) the intercellular junction complex (IFC), mainly composed of the tight (e.g. ZO-1, occludin, claudins) and adherens (e.g. VE-cadherin, beta-catenin) junction proteins that maintain the cell-to-cell contacts to control the interendothelial space (EC intercellular gap) and the abluminal side (tissues compartment) of blood vessels. The disruption of any of these two main components under pathological conditions leads to increased inflammatory pathways with pathogenic consequences involving barrier dysfunction and vasoactive shock, and sometimes, death. In addition to modulating the endothelial barrier function, cytokine and chemokines secreted by DENV infected cells pose important effector functions that promote the recruitment and activation of other immune cells such as NK cells with the ability to induce apoptosis of susceptible target cells (e.g. DENV infected cells) via NK cell mediated cytotoxicity, and antibody (Ab)-dependent NK cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC) [7]. Activation of NK cells also lead to the secretion of an array of immunoregulatory cytokines which condition a bidirectional crosstalk between NK cells and other immune cells such as dendritic cells (DC), macrophages, mast cells, and NK cells themselves. The release of these cytokines can contribute to a cytokine storm, and the tissue damage associated with infection clearance may exacerbate the pro-inflammatory environment. On the other hand, during DENV infection of immune cells, viral clearance of DENV results from a coordinated action of multiple cell types and mechanisms including innate immune responses such as the production of type I and type II interferons, cell killing by cytotoxic lymphocytes and production of neutralizing antibodies by B cells [7, 8, 9]. Intraacellular expression of newly synthesized DENV proteins (e.g. NS3, NS4A, NS4B proteins) enter the MHC class I and II presentation pathways in which viral peptide epitopes are presented on the cell surface either through MHC class II molecules for CD4+ T cells, and MHC class I molecules for CD8+ T cells, which principally lyse infected cells but also produce cytokines with effector functions on the endothelial biology. Like with the antibody response, after primary DENV infection, T cell responses are mainly characterized by higher homotypic than heterotypic responses [8, 10]. However, during DENV secondary infections, this pattern breaks down as B and T cells induced by the prior exposure to a different DENV serotype rapidly turn into highly heterogeneous cross-reactive responses mainly directed against the previously encountered DENV serotype [11]. This phenomenon results in the consistent preferential expansion of pre-existing cross-reactive heterologous memory T cells with higher avidity for the previous DENV serotype and weak-affinity for the new DENV serotype, that may lead to an inefficient in clearing DENV infection, while producing excessive cytokines, leading to the onset of immune pathology such as vascular leak which results in severe disease. This alteration in the T cell immune responses, skewed by the ‘memory’ of the previous infection, is referred to as ‘original antigenic sin’ [12]. In addition to these host factors, the non-structural protein 1 (NS1) of DENV is a multifaceted viral factor that has been also demonstrated to play many roles in DENV pathogenesis. In DENV infected cells, NS1 can be found intracellularly expressed as a monomer in the ER where it forms dimers that play critical roles in the viral replication cycling, particularly the assembly of new viral particles [13]. Secreted NS1 protein from DENV infected cells is a hexameric protein with a barrel-like shape that contains a hydrophobic lipid core (cholesterol and triglycerides), and three domains known as the “wing domain” (here in yellow), the “sin’ domain (here in red), and the β-roll domain (in red) [14], see also Figure 1B. Plasma circulating levels of soluble NS1 (sNS1) have been described to correlate with the appearance of severe disease manifestations such as dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) in DENV-infected patients [15]. sNS1 from DENV has been shown to act as a potential pathogen-associated-molecular pattern (PAMP) that can activate and block the antiviral activity of the complement pathway, an important component of the innate immune response against many human pathogen infections [16]. NS1 can either lead to pathogenesis by increasing the deposition of active complement components on the surface of ECs and human tissues [20], or by directly interacting with the component itself blocking its function or getting rid of some of the critical components involved in complement activation cascade [19]. An additional route for NS1 to cause virus pathogenesis or protection is related to the adaptive immune response generated against the secreted NS1 protein during DENV infection [21]. First, NS1-induced autoantibodies (anti-NS1 antibodies that recognize antigens on the host components) increase the activation of ECs causing barrier dysfunction by increasing the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines that disrupt the integrity of the intercellular junction complex formed by tight and adherens junction proteins (TJ/Al) [24–26]. Overall, this summary figure represents the complex crosstalk between distinct host and viral factors that together trigger a diverse cascade of effector functions leading to protection or pathogenesis, the latter sometimes associated to the development of life-threatening disease manifestations that can result in death.
hexameric during DENV infection in vitro and in vivo (See Figure 1B, Part I) [12, 54–56]. Specific antibodies for NS1 proteins have been also found circulating in DENV infected patients, particularly in secondary cases and are highly serotype cross-reactive [57–59].

In vivo experiments using mouse models for DENV infection, the adoptive transfer of immune serum or monoclonal antibodies specific for pre-M, E or NS1 proteins prevented mortality from lethal challenge with DENV [9, 38, 60–63]. Similarly, passive transfer of anti-E antibodies can protect against infection with DENV in nonhuman primate models [64, 65]. Dengue virus-specific antibodies of the appropriate subclasses can also bind to complement proteins and promote their activation. Fixation of complement to virions by antibodies specific for the pre-M and/or E proteins can inhibit viral infection [66]. NS1-specific antibodies mediate complement-dependent lysis of infected cells; however, this may not fully explain their protective effects in vivo [67]. Additionally, NS1-specific antibodies may also contribute to antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity [67, 68]. Recently, the role of the antibody immune response against the soluble DENV NS1 has become more relevant in the development of future dengue vaccines [9, 62, 69] as NS1 was described to play a key role in the development of DENV pathogenesis. Further evidences from a candidate dengue vaccine has demonstrated the functionality of anti-NS1-specific IgG responses against NS1 pathogenesis in vitro [70]. The phenomenon of NS1 being directly involved in modulating DENV pathogenesis will be discussed in more detail in a different section of this chapter.

1.2 Antibody-dependent enhancement of DENV infection and the cytokine storm

DENV has four distinct serotypes, and infection with one serotype results in the development of homotypic immunity which has been suggested to confer a durable and possible life-long protection against the infecting DENV serotype, but only short-term cross-reactive protection against other serotypes (heterotypic immunity) [13]. This cross-serotype–reactive antibody response is thought to wane to subneutralizing levels, where antibodies still bind, but do not neutralize the infecting virion. In turn, these antibodies contribute to enhanced infection of Fc receptors (FcRs) bearing cells during heterologous DENV encounters (Figure 1) [71, 72]. This phenomenon called “antibody dependent enhancement” or ADE, potentially increases the risk of developing severe disease by virtue of increasing the number of virus infected cells and therefore the viral biomass in vivo accompanied by hyperactivation of infected-immune cells and increased release of vasoactive mediators that resembles some pathologic features of what occurs in patients suffering severe dengue disease including capillary permeability and vascular leak (Figure 1) [73–78].

Multiple prospective cohort studies in Asia and Latin America have identified secondary infection as an epidemiological risk factor for severe dengue [17, 28, 79, 80]. Classical epidemiologic and observational studies have suggested that pre-existing sub-neutralizing antibodies in closely association with immunologic markers and clinical events supports the hypothesis of ADE and the risk of severe dengue during secondary infections [16, 26, 27, 78, 81–83]. Maternally derived subneutralizing levels of DENV-reactive IgGs have been also postulated to be a critical risk factor for severe dengue during infancy [26, 27, 84–86]. Numerous studies performed in animal models have reiterated that ADE results in higher viral load in patients at specific concentration of antibodies (a peak of enhancement), especially at early stages of infection, thereby increasing the risk of developing DHF/DSS [14, 87]. Studies performed in rhesus monkeys confirmed that passive transfer of immune serum or monoclonal antibodies resulted in increased viremia; however, no apparent signs of
severe disease was observed, indicating that severe dengue manifestations may not only be a main consequence of increased viremia [65, 88].

Despite all these evidences, yet no conclusive evidence exist that a risk of severe dengue disease and ADE occur in humans. A recent study using samples from a well-characterized DENV cohort study in children showed that the risk of developing severe dengue disease during secondary dengue infections existed within a narrow range of preexisting anti-DENV antibody titers, a peak of enhancement, detected in humans [29]. Recently, a phase 3 clinical trial of the only dengue vaccine licensed, Dengvaxia [89] showed an increased risk of hospitalization for severe dengue in children not exposed to DENV before vaccination [90], raising concerns about the need to assess dengue vaccine safety at the earliest development stages prior to human vaccination, and confirming that vaccination of DENV-naïve individuals may induce poorly neutralizing anti-DENV antibodies that increase the risk of severe dengue disease [91]. All these observations indicate that ADE may occur in humans and should be an obligate consideration for future designing, implementation, and evaluation of vaccine trials, especially those in the flavivirus field.

DENV-ADE can be mediated by E protein-specific antibodies either at low antibody concentrations or low antibody avidity, when the number of antibody molecules bound per virion is below the threshold necessary for neutralization of the virus (a peak of enhancement) [92]. As DENV E protein binds to cellular receptors and mediates viral fusion during entry, it is thought to be the major target of neutralizing antibodies [33, 41, 93]. However, a substantial proportion of antibodies generated in response to natural DENV infection are directed toward the pre-M protein which represents an important part of the adaptive immune response in DENV infected patients [40, 94].

During DENV infection, the cleavage of pre-M protein represents a critical step for the virus maturation process [49, 95, 96]. As the cleavage of pre-M is not complete in all dengue virions, a proportion of secreted viral particles from infected cells are partially mature dengue virions that contain a varying amount of cleaved and uncleaved pre-M proteins [42, 96, 97]. Immature dengue viral particles contain regular trimeric E-pre-M protein complexes and are noninfectious [49, 98]. In contrast, some partially mature forms, containing some pre-M protein–E protein trimers, are partially infectious. In both cases, uncleaved pre-M protein on immature or partially mature virions can be targeted by the host anti-pre-M antibody response which despite being highly cross-reactive among all four DENV serotypes, can rarely neutralize virus infection even at high concentrations, but promote ADE (Figure 1) [48, 75, 76, 98, 99].

Historically, the DENV-ADE phenomenon has been recapitulated by numerous in vitro studies where FcR-bearing immunes cells including human monocyte/macrophages-like cell lines [48, 73, 74, 77, 98–103], human pre-basophil-like and immature mast cell-like cells [104, 105], human primary derived-monocytes/macrophages, dendritic cells, mast cells [75, 76, 106–110], and human derived-PBMCs [111, 112] have been infected with distinct DENV serotype strains in the presence of monoclonal antibodies or human derived-serum/plasma obtained from DENV infected cases [59, 72, 75, 76, 104, 105, 113–115]. Controversially, DENV-ADE for other considered immune cells such as endothelial cells [116, 117] have been also described in vitro and in vivo [118–121]. However, histochemistry of autopsy samples from fatal dengue cases and in vitro assays using peripheral blood cells revealed that macrophages/monocytes are primary targets for DENV infection and not endothelial cells [122–127]. In vitro, the increased infection of these target cells results in augmented expression/production of cytokines and vasoactive mediators and their release into the extracellular milieu where provoke an exacerbated activation of neighboring
immune cells and endothelial cells which leads to another critical phenomenon that may frequently occur during severe dengue infections known as the “cytokine storm” [10, 11, 73, 107, 128–130]. This phenomenon has been described for several other virus infections (such as influenza viruses, hantaviruses, and potentially coronaviruses), where the scenario envisioned is that this excessive immune activation creates a cascade of cytokine production or “cytokine storm” resulting in increased vascular permeability [131–134]. In vivo, experimental DENV infection in AG129 [135], showed that sub-neutralizing concentrations of anti-E or anti-pre-M antibodies increased DENV pathogenesis and mortality in mice mainly associated with increased circulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines and increased vascular leakage [40, 48, 87, 118, 136].

Mechanistically, it is thought that ADE-DENV infection of Fc receptor-bearing cells, particularly through the Fc-gamma-receptor IIA (FcγRIIA or CD32) [75, 102, 137, 138], not only results in a large virus-infected cell mass, rather the activation of intracellular signaling pathways [109, 139–142] which leads to the increased secretion of vasoactive immune products by infected cells, such as TNF-α, a cytokine produced by activated monocytes, which in elevated levels has been found in serum of DHF/DSS patients [71, 86, 143–145]. In addition to TNF-α, an important number of immune modulators have been described to be implicated in DENV pathogenesis acting upon a complicated network of events to provoke the severe dengue outcomes mainly related to increased vascular leakage. In DENV-infected primary monocytes or monocyctic cell lines, the production of IL-6, IL-8, and interferon gamma-induced protein 10 (IP-10), IL-12p70, IL-1β, IL-10 and the prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) have been found upregulated [73, 74, 76, 77, 109, 112, 137, 142, 146]. In DENV-infected dendritic cells, the production of inflammatory cytokines TNF-α, IFN-α, IL-6, IL-10; the chemokines IFN-γ-inducible chemokines CXCL9, CXCL10, and CXCL11, PGE2, and also matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) such as MMP-2 and MMP-9 were found increasingly produced [75, 76, 147–149]. On the other hand, DENV infection of mast cells has showed to elicit the release of potent vasoactive cytokines such as IL-1β and IL-6; chemokines, such as CCL3, CCL4, CCL5 and CXCL10, and other mast cell-derived mediators including proteases such as chymase and tryptase, leukotrienes, prostaglandins, histamine, and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) which shows the significant influence of mast cells in immunity and pathogenesis during DENV infection [104, 107, 150, 151].

In humans, increased levels of many of these soluble factors including IFN-γ, TNF-α, IL-1β, IL-4, IL-6, IL-7, IL-10, IL-13, IL-15, IL-17, IL-18, macrophage migration inhibitory factor (MIF), chemokines such as IL-8, CCL2, CCL4, CCL5, CXCL10 (IP-10) and the monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 (MCP-1) have been reported in patients with DHF when compared to DF [1, 10, 152–154]. Studies show that elevated levels of IL-6, IL-10, IFN-γ, MIF, and CCL-4 could be used as potential biomarkers of severe dengue [155, 156]. Additional biological markers such as serum lipids [157, 158], prostaglandins, leukotrienes and thromboxane [151, 159], free radical compounds such as reactive oxygen and nitrogen oxide species [160, 161], MPPs [162–164], and several components of the endothelium in the microvasculature such as the vascular cell adhesion molecule 1 (VCAM-1), Angiopoietin-1 and -2 (Ang-1, -2), endothelial-1, [5, 163, 165–167] or carbohydrates including glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) and proteoglycans (e.g. HSPG) [168–171] have been suggested to play important roles in the pathogenesis of different viral infections, including DENV. Changes in the plasma or urine levels of these molecules have been shown to act as potential predictors for clinical outcome between patients with different stages of DHF disease severity and predictors of disease severity in animal models in vivo [168, 170–174].

DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.93551
1.3 T cell responses and “the antigenic sin” of DENV infection

During DENV replication cycle, the viral genomic RNA encodes for a single polypeptide that after being cleaved by cellular and viral proteases yield three structural proteins and seven nonstructural proteins [42, 175] (See Figure 1A, Part I). Numerous studies have demonstrated that DENV infection leads to potent T cell responses, and many DENV-T cell epitopes have been found throughout the DENV polyprotein ex vivo using human leukocytes and in vivo using murine models [176–179]. These T cell epitopes appear to follow the general principles of T cell epitope immunogenicity, as they show similar MHC molecule binding kinetics to those of other immunodominant viral epitopes. Several studies indicate that nonstructural proteins are more frequently recognized by CD8+ T cells, while structural proteins are better recognized by CD4+ T cells. [180, 181]. However, most of the identified CD8+ and/or CD4+ T cell epitopes predominantly reside in the nonstructural proteins 3 (NS3) suggesting that NS3 protein is immunodominantly recognized by T cell epitopes in humans infected with DENV [8, 177, 182–184]. On the other hand, CD8+ and CD4+ T cell responses have been also identified, to a lesser extent, against other viral proteins such as the viral capsid, Ns1, NS2A/B, NS4A/B, and NS5 proteins [177, 178, 185, 186]. The recognition pattern of T cell receptors (TCRs) to these proteins expressed in the context of MHC differs according to the type of HLA which confers either susceptibility or protection to severe dengue infections [187, 188]. HLA class I and class II alleles have been shown to be associated with the development of DHF/DSS in different populations [182, 187, 189–192]. However, some specific HLA alleles are found to be more significantly common among patients with dengue fever than those undergoing severe dengue manifestations suggesting a protective effect of DENV-specific T cells [191]. Overall, the T cell immunodominance of DENV is quite complex and widely focused on different epitopes identified across the whole virus proteome [177, 183, 192]. Given that around 70% of amino acid identity exist between all four DENV serotypes, T cell epitopes are also highly cross-reactive and this has been suggested to play important roles in protective immunity not only against DENV but also other related flavivirus such as Zika virus (ZIKV) [193–195].

The protective role of T cells in viral infections is well established [196]. Dengue virus-specific T cells recognize virus-infected cells and respond with a diverse set of effector functions, including proliferation, target cell lysis and the production of a range of cytokines [197]. In vivo, CD8+ T cells control viral infection via direct cytotoxicity, and production of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as IFN-γ and TNF-α; in turn, CD4+ T cells induce enhancement of B and CD8+ T cell responses, production of inflammatory and anti-viral cytokines, cytotoxicity, and promotion of memory responses to defeat viral infections [178, 179, 198–200]. T cell activity requires the presentation of viral peptides on the surface of infected cells in the context of MHC molecules and, unlike B cells, T cells do not recognize intact virions [196]. In vitro, DENV specific CD8+ memory T-cells can lyse MHC-matched virus-infected cells as an antiviral mechanism leading to protection [199, 201]. Activation of cytotoxic CD8+ T cells after presentation of viral peptides by infected antigen presenting cells (APCs) can generate immediate effector functions by expressing cytotoxic molecules such as granzyme B and perforin to kill virus-infected cells via MHC I- and MHC II-dependent mechanisms [10]. In vivo studies have shown that adoptive transfer of DENV-specific CD8+ T cell can partially protect mice from lethal challenge with DENV [202]. Other studies involving immunization with antigens that induce DENV-specific T cells but not neutralizing antibodies, have also shown that T cells are enough to protect mice from lethal infection [179, 203, 204]. These studies suggest that CD4+ or CD8+ T cells may have beneficial roles in controlling virus replication during DENV infections.
Although T cells have important functions in combating viral pathogens, both pathological and protective effects of T cells have been reported in the context of DENV infection [177, 178]. The association of severe dengue symptoms with a rapid decline in viral loads and a peak of pro-inflammatory cytokine secretion have led to the proposal of a role for a T cell mediated immune response in driving immunopathology in severe dengue [205]. T cell responses after primary DENV infections are characterized by higher homotypic than heterotypic responses [194]. However, in secondary DENV infections, T cell responses are highly serotype cross-reactive [206] with higher responses maintained to the previously encountered DENV serotype [207]. This alteration in the T cell immune responses, skewed by the ‘memory’ of the previous infection, is referred to as ‘original antigenic sin’ [10, 207] (Figure 1). According to this hypothesis, secondary DENV infection is dominated by the expansion of pre-existing nonprotective, cross-reactive and low affinity T cells to the new infecting serotype that results in ineffective viral control and elicit an aberrant immune response that contribute to immunopathology and severe dengue disease through an excessive production of inflammatory cytokines [10, 177, 178, 205, 207, 208]. Distinct studies in vitro using tetramers containing peptides from either the primary or secondary infecting viruses, have provided evidences for the original antigenic sin occurring in secondary T cell responses to DENV [207, 209].

The magnitude of the T cell response positively correlates with disease severity [183, 207]. Studies of the function of dengue-specific T cells has revealed an interesting difference between mild and severe infections [183]. Profound activation of naïve T cells into effector T cells and increased cytokine production have been reported in patients with DHF during both primary and secondary DENV infections [1]. T cell responses in severe dengue patients mainly produce IFN-γ and TNF-α [183]. Additionally, a broad spectrum of cytokines has been shown to be produced by DENV-specific T cells in response to the recognition of peptide-MHC complexes on target cells. This array of cytokines follows a T helper 1 (TH1)- or TH0-like profile including the production of IFN-γ, TNF-α, IL-2, and MIP1β, also known as CCL4, and less commonly, the TH2-type cytokines, IL-4 [15, 193]. Many of these T cell-derived cytokines have pleiotropic effects, including the induction or enhancement of inflammation and the alteration of vascular permeability that may contribute to the systemic disturbances leading to DHF [1, 10, 208].

Despite all this evidence, the relative contribution of DENV activated T cells in dengue pathogenesis and control of viral infection is still controversial. Severe dengue can occur during a primary dengue infection in which cross-reactive T cells and original antigenic sin would not be operative [210]. In addition, the relatively low numbers of circulating T cells seen during acute DENV infection and the temporal mismatch between the appearance of DENV NS3-specific CD8+ T cells, and the appearance of vascular leakage manifestations, suggests that other mechanisms independent of CD8+ T cells are responsible for early triggering of capillary leakage in children with DHF [207, 211]. A recent study found that numbers of DENV-specific T cells were augmented in the skin of DENV-infected patients compared to those circulating in the peripheral blood, suggesting that during the acute phase, DENV-specific T cells may migrate to the skin and return the bloodstream upon viral clearance [212, 213]. During secondary infections, the expansion of the low-avidity T cells specific for the primary DENV infection may delay viral clearance and thereby lead to higher viral loads. These results may explain the asynchronies timing between T cells circulating in the blood and the beginning of capillary permeability that occurs in DENV infection. However, in the absence of a good animal model of disease, it remains controversial whether the expansion of low-avidity cross-reactive T cells in secondary dengue infection contributes to disease pathogenesis. In summary, during DENV infection, the generation of an early T cell response may be
Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

of the previous infection, is referred to as 'original antigenic sin' [206] with higher responses maintained to the previously encountered DENV serotype. The association of severe dengue symptoms with a rapid decline in viral loads and a peak of pro-inflammatory cytokine secretion have led DENV infection [177, 178]. The association of severe dengue symptoms with a rapid decline in viral loads and a peak of pro-inflammatory cytokine secretion suggests DENV infection, the transient nature of plasma leakage, its association with the late febrile phase and the paucity of structural damage to the vasculature identified by autopsy studies initially suggested that circulating factors were primarily responsible for this phenomenon [5, 125, 126, 205].

Although a major risk factor for developing severe dengue disease is related to the DENV-ADE phenomenon that correlates with increased plasma levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines found in the acute phase of patients undergoing severe dengue manifestations [1, 83], ADE alone seems not to be sufficient to explain the vascular pathology associated with DHF since not all secondary heterotypic infections results in severe disease, and many individuals also experience DHF during primary infection [16]. The association of severe dengue symptoms with a rapid decline in viral loads and a peak of pro-inflammatory cytokine secretion suggests that although subneutralizing antibodies can increase dengue disease severity via ADE, other factors may also influence disease outcome, driving the immunopathology in severe dengue [10, 205].

Very recently, a new piece in DENV pathogenesis puzzle, known as the nonstructural protein 1 or NS1, was reported to directly be involved in inducing endothelial dysfunction in vitro and vascular leakage in vivo via alteration of the endothelial barrier function and activation of immune cells and platelets, the latter resulting in induction of pro-inflammatory signaling pathways leading to increased secretion of vasoactive molecules and vascular leakage [9, 215, 216]. Initially recognized as a soluble complement-fixing (SCF) antigen detected in the blood of DENV-infected patients [217], NS1 of the flavivirus genus including DENV, is the only flaviviral protein described to be secreted by infected mammalian and insect cells [218–221], which circulates in the bloodstream of DENV-infected patients for up to 14 days since the onset of symptoms [222]. This bioavailability feature of NS1 launched it as a diagnostic marker for acute primary and secondary DENV infections and potentially other flavivirus diseases [54, 223–225]. NS1 antigenemia can reach as high as 50 µg/mL during the acute phase of dengue illness correlating with the development of DHF and sometimes fatality cases [12, 14, 54, 170, 223, 226–228]. These observations suggest that circulating levels of NS1 in the bloodstream of patients during the clinical phase of the disease may contribute to DENV pathogenesis.

In infected cells, NS1 is found as a membrane-associated dimer in both cellular compartments and on the cell surface. NS1 is intracellularly generated as a monomeric glycoprotein in the ER of DENV infected cells, where it has been demonstrated to play essential roles as cofactor in virus replication and virus assembly by recruiting cellular proteins as well as viral proteins such as the envelope protein during virus morphogenesis which results in the biogenesis of the membranous DENV RC organelle [229–233]. NS1 is also secreted by infected cells and recent structural

14 DENV infection, NS1 pathogenesis, and vascular leak

The hallmark and critical feature of severe dengue disease is the increased capillary permeability, causing plasma leakage, which can lead to hemodynamic compromise and dengue shock syndrome (DSS) [2–4]. The plasma leakage syndrome, is defined as the extensive extravasation and accumulation of fluids out of blood vessels into the surrounding tissues and serous cavities, causing serositis which includes pleural effusion, and pericardial and peritoneal ascites, leading to hemocoagulation, hypotension, organ dysfunction, and life-threatening shock [6, 214]. In DENV infection, the transient nature of plasma leakage, its association with the late febrile phase and the paucity of structural damage to the vasculature identified by autopsy studies initially suggested that circulating factors were primarily responsible for this phenomenon [5, 125, 126, 205].

Although a major risk factor for developing severe dengue disease is related to the DENV-ADE phenomenon that correlates with increased plasma levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines found in the acute phase of patients undergoing severe dengue manifestations [1, 83], ADE alone seems not to be sufficient to explain the vascular pathology associated with DHF since not all secondary heterotypic infections results in severe disease, and many individuals also experience DHF during primary infection [16]. The association of severe dengue symptoms with a rapid decline in viral loads and a peak of pro-inflammatory cytokine secretion suggests that although subneutralizing antibodies can increase dengue disease severity via ADE, other factors may also influence disease outcome, driving the immunopathology in severe dengue [10, 205].

Very recently, a new piece in DENV pathogenesis puzzle, known as the nonstructural protein 1 or NS1, was reported to directly be involved in inducing endothelial dysfunction in vitro and vascular leakage in vivo via alteration of the endothelial barrier function and activation of immune cells and platelets, the latter resulting in induction of pro-inflammatory signaling pathways leading to increased secretion of vasoactive molecules and vascular leakage [9, 215, 216]. Initially recognized as a soluble complement-fixing (SCF) antigen detected in the blood of DENV-infected patients [217], NS1 of the flavivirus genus including DENV, is the only flaviviral protein described to be secreted by infected mammalian and insect cells [218–221], which circulates in the bloodstream of DENV-infected patients for up to 14 days since the onset of symptoms [222]. This bioavailability feature of NS1 launched it as a diagnostic marker for acute primary and secondary DENV infections and potentially other flavivirus diseases [54, 223–225]. NS1 antigenemia can reach as high as 50 µg/mL during the acute phase of dengue illness correlating with the development of DHF and sometimes fatality cases [12, 14, 54, 170, 223, 226–228]. These observations suggest that circulating levels of NS1 in the bloodstream of patients during the clinical phase of the disease may contribute to DENV pathogenesis.

In infected cells, NS1 is found as a membrane-associated dimer in both cellular compartments and on the cell surface. NS1 is intracellularly generated as a monomeric glycoprotein in the ER of DENV infected cells, where it has been demonstrated to play essential roles as cofactor in virus replication and virus assembly by recruiting cellular proteins as well as viral proteins such as the envelope protein during virus morphogenesis which results in the biogenesis of the membranous DENV RC organelle [229–233]. NS1 is also secreted by infected cells and recent structural
analyses showed that secreted NS1 circulates as a soluble hexamer glycoprotein with an atypical open barrel-shape that contains a prominent central lipid-enriched core of triglycerides, cholesteryl esters, and phospholipids that evokes a plasma high-density lipoprotein [53, 234] (Figure 1). Elucidation of the crystal structures of the NS1 hexamers reveal an amphipathic molecule with a hydrophobic inner face and a hydrophilic outer face containing three structural domains known as the hydrophobic “β-roll”, the “wing” domain, and the c-terminal “β-ladder” domain that likely have distinct roles in membrane association, replication complex assembly, and interactions with the immune system and are the basis for elucidating the molecular mechanism of NS1 function [235, 236] (See Figure 1B, Part I). These same structural domains were also identified by cryo-EM reconstruction studies of other related flavivirus NS1 proteins such as West Nile virus (WNV), Zika virus (ZIKV), and yellow fever virus (YFV) [237–239].

In addition to the role played in viral replication, NS1 participates in dengue immunopathogenesis by inhibiting platelet aggregation and prothrombin activation, directing complement against endothelial cells, inducing endothelial cell apoptosis, and facilitating the evasion of DENV particles from complement system–dependent neutralization [229, 240]. Regarding the complement pathways, NS1 mediates complement inactivation through multiple interactions with the complement proteins including factor H, C1s and C4, and the C4 binding protein [241–244]. These interactions result in attenuation of complement classical, lectin, and alternative pathways suggesting that extracellular NS1 protein may function to minimize immune system responses by decreasing complement recognition of DENV infected cells [19]. However, in flavivirus infections, the complement system has been described to play an important role in protecting the host but also influencing disease pathogenesis [19]. In DENV infected patients with DSS, accelerated complement consumption and a marked reduction in plasma complement components has been observed, which led to the proposal that complement activation plays an important role in disease pathogenesis [20, 245]. Recent studies from human autopsies have identified more evidences of increased deposition of complement components from both classical and alternative pathways associated with increased liver damage [126].

In the context of DENV NS1, both soluble NS1 and cell membrane-associated NS1 have been identified to triggers complement activation and anaphylatoxin formation in the presence of polyclonal or monoclonal anti-NS1 antibodies [246] (Figure 1). In vitro and in vivo experiments using anti-NS1 specific antibodies as well as antiserum obtained from DENV immunized mice and rabbits have reported their cross-reactivity with various epitopes found on human plasma proteins involved in coagulation pathways such as fibrinogen, plasminogen, and thrombin as well as integrin/adhesion proteins, endothelial cells and platelets leading to inflammation, apoptosis, and dysfunction of endothelial cells and platelets which sometimes results in bleeding issues [247–252]. Based on these evidences, autoimmune mechanisms mediated by anti-NS1 antibodies have been also proposed to lead to symptoms of DHF related to increasing vascular permeability maybe in a complement dependent manner. However, numerous past and new growing evidence describing the role of anti-NS1 antibody responses in NS1-immunized mouse models, DENV infected patients or DENV vaccine trails suggest an important protective effect of anti-NS1 immune responses as prophylactic or therapeutic options against DENV infection and other related flavivirus infections [9, 57, 62, 63, 70, 186, 253–260]. Therefore, the dual role of anti-NS1 antibodies in protection and disease still represents a critical challenge that needs to be overcome to develop an effective and safe NS1-based vaccine against flavivirus infections.

As mentioned previously, endothelial barrier dysfunction leading to vascular leakage and shock are the major causes of death in patients with dengue
hemorrhagic fever (DHF) and dengue shock syndrome (DSS) [2]. The vascular alterations observed in dengue cases have been described to be a consequence of the imbalance of the host immune system, specially cytokine storm, cytotoxic T cell and complement activations [1, 10, 11], in addition to endothelium injuries caused by the direct infection of the virus of endothelial cells, as reported by several in vitro studies [261, 262]. Endothelial cells, lining the inner side of blood vessels, constitute a critical component of the vascular endothelium which are in direct contact with the plasma proteins and all cellular components circulating in the bloodstream [263]. Under homeostatic conditions, this layer of endothelial cells crucially conducts several essential processes such as maintenance of vessel integrity, supply of oxygen and nutrients to underlying tissues and patrolling immune cell trafficking [264, 265]. Thus, alterations on its integrity under pathologic circumstances result in malfunction which contributes to inflammation and disease [265] (Figure 1).

Secreted hexameric DENV NS1 protein has been described to attaches to the surface of uninfected cells, primarily human endothelial cells in vitro and in vivo via interactions with heparan sulfate and chondroitin sulfate E [266]. In 2015, a new role for soluble NS1 in eliciting direct pathogenic effects in DENV disease was described [9]. In this study, the barrier function of human pulmonary microvascular endothelial cells (HPMEC) cultured under polarized conditions on semipermeable membrane filters (e.g. Transwells inserts) was compromised after being exposed to physiological concentrations (0.5–5 ug/mL) of recombinant soluble and hexameric NS1 proteins from all four DENV serotypes (DENV 1–4) in vitro. Interestingly, this pathogenic effect was recapitulated in vivo when inoculation of mice (e.g. Ifnar−/−) with only DENV NS1 in the absence of DENV infection results in increased mice morbidity. More interesting, a combination of DENV NS1 with a sublethal dose of DENV2 made mice succumbed. These NS1-induced morbidity/mortality effects in vivo was significantly related to the increased vascular leak observed in these mice, phenomenon that was shown to be prevented by NS1 immunization or prophylactic treatment of mice using NS1-derived mouse antiserum or anti-NS1 monoclonal antibodies that also blocked NS1-increased permeability of HPMEC cultures in vitro. This study demonstrate how NS1 alone was able to mediate DENV pathogenesis by triggering endothelial dysfunction in vitro which was linked to increased vascular leak and mortality in vivo [9]. Interestingly, an additional study showed that the secreted form of NS1 may act as a pathogen associated-molecular pattern (PAMP) as purified NS1 protein was able to directly activate mouse macrophages and human PBMCs via Toll-like receptor 4 (TLR4), which leads to the induction and release of pro-inflammatory cytokines and chemokines in vitro (e.g. TNF-α, IL-6, IFN-β, IL-1β, and IL-12); later, this effect was prevented by TLR4 antagonists and anti-TLR4 antibody treatment in a mouse model of DENV infection [215]. These evidences strongly support the important contribution of NS1 in modulating the endothelial cell biology and the inflammatory responses of immune cells as two of the main mechanisms described to influence DENV pathogenesis and therefore severe disease.

On the endothelium, two main structures work together to maintain the homeostasis of the microvasculature: a network of glycosaminoglycans, glycoproteins, and proteoglycans known as the endothelial glycocalyx layer (EGL) and an array of protein-to-protein interactions that integrates the intercellular junction complex (IJC), mainly composed by tight and adherens junction proteins, and other structures such as gaps and desmosomes [257–259]. Based on the first set of evidence showing a direct role of NS1 on the endothelial cell barrier, subsequent studies have identified distinct mechanisms triggered by DENV NS1 to cause endothelial hyperpermeability and vascular leak such as disruption of EGL (e.g. sialic acid,
heparan sulfate, syndecan-1) expressed on the surface of HPMEC and the microvasculature in vivo via activation/expression of endothelial enzymes including sialidases, heparanase, and cathepsin L, a lysosomal cysteine proteinase, all of these occurring in a cytokine-independent manner [267, 268] (Figure 1). An additional study corroborates these findings showing that NS1 induces the increased secretion of vasoactive molecules such as the macrophage migration inhibitory factor (MIF) and the angiopoietin-1 and 2 (Ang-1/Ang-2) from human endothelial cells (e.g. HMEC-1 from dermis) and DENV infected patients. These molecules were shown to activate autophagy pathways, phosphorylation cascades, and actin cytoskeleton rearrangements leading to disarrangement and internalization of VE-cadherin, an adherens junction protein of endothelial cell-to-cell contacts, inflammation, and also secretion of heparanase, shedding of syndecan-1 (CD138), and expression of MMP-9 from immune cells, resulting in degradation of EGL and hyperpermeability in vitro [269–272]. Follow up studies in human primary monocytes, monocytic cell lines, and human platelets stimulated with exogenous NS1 in vitro have additionally demonstrated the NS1-mediated activation and stimulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines and proteases (e.g. MMPs) via TLR4 signaling supporting previous reports of NS1 protein acting as a PAMP leading to inflammation, thrombocytopenia, hemorrhage and disease in DENV infection [273–275].

Besides DENV, the flavivirus genus includes other human medically important mosquito-borne pathogens such as ZIKV, WNv, Japanese encephalitis virus (JEV), and YFV [276]. In humans, flaviviruses can cause a wide spectrum of systemic or neurotropic-encephalitic pathologies ranging from clinically inapparent infections to severe, sometimes fatal disease, characterized by hemorrhagic manifestations and vascular leakage with organ failure (DENV and YFV), encephalitic manifestations (JEV and WNv), and congenital Zika syndrome in pregnancy and Guillain-Barré syndrome in adults associated with ZIKV infection [277, 278]. In recent studies, NS1 proteins from other DENV-closely related flavivirus including ZIKV, WNv, JEV, and YFV also demonstrated to cause endothelial hyperpermeability and vascular leak [172, 173, 279]. Interestingly, NS1 proteins selectively bind to and alters permeability of human endothelial cells from distinct tissues including lung, dermis, umbilical vein, brain, and liver in vitro and causes tissue-specific vascular leakage in mice, reflecting the pathophysiology of each flavivirus. Mechanistically, flaviviruses NS1 trigger the disruption of EGL components to cause endothelial hyperpermeability [172, 173, 253, 279]. On the vascular endothelium, the EGL constitutes a network of GAGs such as heparan sulfate, chondroitin sulfate, and hyaluronic acid, and proteoglycans (e.g., syndecans, glypicans, and perlecan) that contributes to maintain the homeostasis of the endothelial barrier function [280]. Degradation of the EGL and the detection of its degradation products in cell supernatants and human plasma have been linked to virus pathogenesis and disease severity in several viral hemorrhagic fever diseases [281], including dengue, where increased levels of heparan sulfate, hyaluronic acid, sialic acid, and syndecan-1 have been found to correlate with severe dengue disease in humans and lethality in animal models [3, 168–170, 172].

This NS1 pathogenic effect on the endothelium requires the internalization of the soluble NS1 protein inside human endothelial cells [279] (Figure 1). This process occurs via clathrin-mediated endocytosis and relies on one of the glycosylation sites (Asparagine-207) located in the Wing domain of NS1 [279]. DENV NS1 contains two conserved N-linked glycans at the asparagine-130 (N130) and the asparagine-207 (N207) which have been implicated in NS1 hexamer secretion, stability, and function [234, 236, 282, 283]. Previous studies investigating the importance of the N-glycans on NS1 have found that deglycosylated flaviviral NS1 proteins at either site, exhibited significant attenuation of neurovirulence in mice.
compared to the wild-type virus [284–286]. Additional in vitro studies have shown that endocytosis of DENV NS1 occur in human hepatocytes which may potentiate subsequent DENV infection [221].

Flavivirus infection has been shown to compromise the integrity of many biological barriers, including the lung microvascular endothelium and the blood–brain barrier, which are usually able to protect against virus infection [287, 288]. Numerous studies of flavivirus infection in different animal models as well as human autopsies have shown a selective tropism of distinct groups of flaviviruses that target different tissues, leading to systemic versus neurotropic-encephalitic pathology [277]. The fact that NS1 internalization is required to induce endothelial hyperpermeability and increased vascular leak through a flaviviral-conserved endothelial cell–intrinsic pathways, and the finding that the flaviviral virulence depends on the expression of N-glycans on soluble NS1, suggest the possibility that NS1 may favor virus propagation and pathogenesis in vivo. During the acute phase of DENV infection high NS1 antigenemia have been correlated with increased risk of developing severe dengue disease, including vascular leakage [12, 14]; however, little is known about circulating levels of NS1 from other flavivirus infections. Future studies intended to investigate the kinetics and dynamics of NS1 circulation in flavivirus-infected patients different than DENV, will help to better understand the role of NS1 in flavivirus pathogenesis and disease. NS1 is well conserved among flaviviruses (20–40% identity, 60–80% similarity) [289], therefore, these findings reveal the capacity of a secreted viral protein from related flaviviruses named as NS1 flaviviral toxin as critical for pan-flavivirus pathogenesis through modulation of the endothelial barrier function in a tissue-specific manner, potentially influencing virus dissemination and pathogenesis of target organs and representing a novel target for anti-flaviviral therapy and potential vaccine candidates against flavivirus infections.

2. Concluding remarks (PART II)

Systemic vascular leakage associated with DENV infection is the most serious complication and the most important contributor to severe clinical outcomes during severe dengue disease that result in life-threatening complications such as hypotension, organ failure, and shock. Epidemiological data strongly associate severe dengue disease with secondary heterotypic DENV infections occurring in the presence of pre-existing antibody responses, widely attributed to the phenomenon of antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE). Numerous studies in vivo and in vitro have tightened DENV-ADE to the increased activation of immune cells such as monocytes, macrophages, dendritic cells, and mast cells leading to the generation of the pro-inflammatory environment found in many patients undergoing severe dengue, known as “cytokine storm”. Along with DENV-ADE, heterotypic immunity originated during primary DENV infection may also lead to alterations in immune responses of T cells, skewed by the ‘memory’ of the previous infection, referred to as ‘original antigenic sin’. These DENV cross-reactive T cell responses produce only inflammatory cytokines and might be inherently inefficient in killing DENV-infected cells, resulting in enhanced infection, which may predispose to the immunopathology of DENV.

Along with this evidence, in the last decades, several other immunologic mechanisms such as activation of complement pathways and autoimmune responses (e.g. mimetic anti-DENV antibodies) have been also linked to ensure severe dengue manifestations leading to the activation and apoptosis of immune cells and endothelial cells, aggregation of platelets, and inactivation of plasma proteins involved in coagulation cascades. On the other hand, viral biomarkers such as NS1, which
high circulating levels correlated with the appearance of severe dengue disease, was reported to modulate complement pathways, facilitating virus infection via immune evasion strategies. NS1 has demonstrated to exert an amazing array of different functions. More recently, NS1 was demonstrated to be a multitasking protein of the flavivirus genus which could directly cause disruption of the EGL and endothelial cell-to-cell contacts, two main components of the homeostasis balance in the microvasculature, and to induce the production of soluble immunoregulators resulting in increased endothelial barrier dysfunction and vascular leakage. This evidence provides new insights into the biology of the multifaceted NS1 protein of flavivirus that may improve the understanding of the flavivirus pathogenesis, strongly supporting the inclusion of NS1 protein in flavivirus vaccine development and the generation of new targets for future therapies against flavivirus infections.

In conclusion, the immunopathogenesis of DENV infection represents an extraordinarily complex interplay between several viral and host factors that together contribute intimately to the activation of distinct immunopathological processes that although were intended to control the viral infection and replication, instead unleash an unbalanced host immune response leading to increased endothelial dysfunction and vascular leakage, reflected in the appearance of dengue severe manifestations. As no effective vaccine or antiviral therapy are available to treat either prophylactically or therapeutically the DENV infection, the incidence of dengue disease is expanding globally and continues to threat the public health services worldwide, particularly in endemic areas. An increased understanding of DENV immunopathogenesis mechanisms involved in the development of severe disease, their components, biological triggers, and their potential connections will assist not only the development of potentially more effective novel therapeutic interventions but also the understanding of dengue vaccine efficacy or vaccine adverse events that can be considered during vaccine trial interventions.

Acknowledgements

To the Canadian Institutes of Health Research and the International Development Research Centre (Projects 108,412 & 109,071–002) and the Fondo Mixto CONACYT-Gobierno del Estado de Yucatan (Project YUC-2017-2103-01-556).
high circulating levels correlated with the appearance of severe dengue disease, was reported to modulate complement pathways, facilitating virus infection via immune evasion strategies. NS1 has demonstrated to exert an amazing array of different functions. More recently, NS1 was demonstrated to be a multitasking protein of the flavivirus genus which could directly cause disruption of the EGL and endothelial cell-to-cell contacts, two main components of the homeostasis balance in the microvasculature, and to induce the production of soluble immunoregulators resulting in increased endothelial barrier dysfunction and vascular leakage. This evidence provides new insights into the biology of the multifaceted NS1 protein of flavivirus that may improve the understanding of the flavivirus pathogenesis, strongly supporting the inclusion of NS1 protein in flavivirus vaccine development and the generation of new targets for future therapies against flavivirus infections.

In conclusion, the immunopathogenesis of DENV infection represents an extraordinarily complex interplay between several viral and host factors that together contribute intimately to the activation of distinct immunopathological processes that although were intended to control the viral infection and replication, instead unleash an unbalanced host immune response leading to increased endothelial dysfunction and vascular leakage, reflected in the appearance of dengue severe manifestations. As no effective vaccine or antiviral therapy are available to treat either prophylactically or therapeutically the DENV infection, the incidence of dengue disease is expanding globally and continues to threat the public health services worldwide, particularly in endemic areas. An increased understanding of DENV immunopathogenesis mechanisms involved in the development of severe disease, their components, biological triggers, and their potential connections will assist not only the development of potentially more effective novel therapeutic interventions but also the understanding of dengue vaccine efficacy or vaccine adverse events that can be considered during vaccine trial interventions.

Acknowledgements

To the Canadian Institutes of Health Research and the International Development Research Centre (Projects 108,412 & 109,071–002) and the Fondo Mixto CONACYT -Gobierno del Estado de Yucatan (Project YUC-2017-2103-01-556).
References


[16] Guzman MG, Alvarez M, Halstead SB. Secondary infection as a risk factor for dengue hemorrhagic fever/dengue shock syndrome: An historical perspective and role of


envelope glycoprotein of dengue virus during the natural course of infection are predominantly cross-reactive and recognize epitopes contained highly conserved residues at the fusion loop of domain II. Journal of Virology. 2008;82(13):6631-6643


antibodies isolated from viremic patients infected with dengue virus. Nature Immunology. 2015;16(7):785


[88] Halstead SB. In vivo enhancement of dengue virus infection in rhesus monkeys by passively transferred antibody. The Journal of Infectious Diseases. 1979;140(4):527-533


[95] Kuhn RJ, Dowd KA, Beth Post C, Pierson TC. Shake, rattle, and roll: Impact of the dynamics of flavivirus particles on their interactions with the host. Virology. 2015;479-480:508-517


[120] Talavera D, Castillo AM, Dominguez MC, Gutierrez AE, Meza I. IL8 release, tight junction and cytoskeleton dynamic reorganization conducive to permeability increase are induced by dengue virus infection of microvascular endothelial monolayers. The Journal of General Virology. 2004; 85(Pt 7):1801-1813


[145] Meena AA, Murugesan A, Sopnajothi S, Yong YK, Ganesh PS, Vimali IJ, et al. Increase of plasma TNF-alpha is associated with decreased levels of blood platelets in clinical dengue infection. Viral Immunology. 2020;33(1):54-60

[146] Tan TY, Chu JJH. Dengue virus-infected human monocytes trigger late
activation of caspase-1, which mediates pro-inflammatory IL-1beta secretion and pyroptosis. The Journal of General Virology. 2013;94(Pt 10):2215-2220


Current Topics in Microbiology and Immunology. 2010;338:67-82


[176] Vaughan K, Greenbaum J, Blythe M, Peters B, Sette A. Meta-analysis of all immune epitope data
in the Flavivirus genus: Inventory of current immune epitope data status in the context of virus immunity and immunopathology. Viral Immunology. 2010;23(3):259-284


[188] Xavier-Carvalho C, Cardoso CC, de Souza Kehdy F, Pacheco AG, Moraes MO. Host genetics and dengue fever. Infection, Genetics and Evolution. 2017;56:99-110


[190] Nguyen TP, Kikuchi M, Vu TQ, Do QH, Tran TT, Vo DT, et al. Protective and enhancing HLA alleles, HLA-DRB1*0901 and HLA-A*24, for severe


[193] Bashyam HS, Green S, Rothman AL. Dengue virus-reactive CD8+ T cells display quantitative and qualitative differences in their response to variant epitopes of heterologous viral serotypes. Journal of Immunology. 2006;176(5):2817-2824


[195] Rivino L, Lim MQ. CD4(+) and CD8(+) T-cell immunity to dengue—lessons for the study of Zika virus. Immunology. 2017;150(2):146-154


[225] Casenghi M, Kosack C, Li R, Bastard M, Ford N. NS1 antigen detecting assays for diagnosing acute dengue infection in people living in or returning from endemic countries. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews. 2018;2018(5):CD011155


Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

replication in Huh-7 cells. Virology. 2015;484:113-126


[247] Falconar AK. The dengue virus nonstructural-1 protein (NS1) generates antibodies to common epitopes on human blood clotting, integrin/adhesin proteins and binds to human endothelial cells: Potential
implications in haemorrhagic fever pathogenesis. Archives of Virology. 1997;142(5):897-916


[262] Avirutnan P, Malasit P, Seliger B, Bhakdi S, Husmann M. Dengue virus infection of human endothelial cells leads to chemokine production,
complement activation, and apoptosis. The Journal of Immunology. 1998;161(11):6338


[286] Whiteman MC, Wicker JA, Kinney RM, Huang CYH, Solomon T, Barrett ADT. Multiple amino acid changes at the first glycosylation motif in NS1 protein of West Nile virus are necessary for complete attenuation for mouse neuroinvasiveness. Vaccine. 2011;29(52):9702-9710


Section 3
Molecular Biology
Diagnosis and Control
Strategies
Section 3

Molecular Biology Diagnosis and Control Strategies
Chapter 6
Dengue Virus and the Relationship with MicroRNAs

Samir Casseb and Karla de Melo

Abstract
Dengue is an acute febrile disease caused by a virus of the genus *Flavivirus*, family Flaviviridae, endemic in tropical regions of the globe. The agent is a virus with single-stranded RNA, classified into four distinct dengue virus (DENV) serotypes: DENV-1, DENV-2, DENV-3, and DENV-4. The host’s innate and adaptive immune responses play an essential role in determining the natural history of viral infections, especially in dengue. In this context, it has been observed in recent years that the presence of RNA interference (RNAi) in viral infection processes is increasing, as well as immune defense. The context of microRNAs (miRNAs) has been highlighted, as their presence during viral infection, both in the replication of the virus and in the defense against these infections, becomes increasingly noticeable, therefore, making it increasingly necessary to better understand the role of these small RNAs within viral infection by DENV and what their consequences are in aggravating the consequences of patients affected by this disease.

Keywords: dengue, miRNA, genetics, immunology, Flavivirus

1. Introduction

RNA interference (RNAi) is understood as the mechanism of gene silencing through transcription or post-transcription. Post-transcription gene silencing (PTGS) operates through translational repression induced by microRNAs (miRNAs), from precursors transcribed in the nucleus [1].

The silencing machinery by microRNAs directs mRNA to the P bodies present in the cytoplasm. They are deprived of the translation machinery and conserve proteins involved in the degradation of the target mRNA [2].

The natural functions of RNAi and their related processes appear to be the protection of the genome against invasion by mobile genetic elements, such as viruses and transposons, as well as the functioning of eukaryotic organism development programs [3, 4].

These analyses led to the identification of proteins encoded by the host involved in gene silencing. Also, they revealed that several enzymes or essential factors are common to these processes. Some components have identified to serve as initiators. In contrast, others serve as effectors, amplifiers, and transmitters for the gene silencing process [5].

The RNAi is widely used to fight viruses, due to the exposure of their genetic material in the intracellular environment at various stages of their replication cycle [6, 7]. Due to the distinction between viral and cellular genomes, the...
Chapter 6

Dengue Virus and the Relationship with MicroRNAs

Samir Casseb and Karla de Melo

Abstract

Dengue is an acute febrile disease caused by a virus of the genus *Flavivirus*, family Flaviviridae, endemic in tropical regions of the globe. The agent is a virus with single-stranded RNA, classified into four distinct dengue virus (DENV) serotypes: DENV-1, DENV-2, DENV-3, and DENV-4. The host's innate and adaptive immune responses play an essential role in determining the natural history of viral infections, especially in dengue. In this context, it has observed in recent years that the presence of RNA interference (RNAi) in viral infection processes is increasing, as well as immune defense. The context microRNAs (miRNAs) go for stood out, as their presence during viral infection, both in the replication of the virus and in the defense against these infections, becomes increasingly noticeable, therefore, making it increasingly necessary to better understand the role of these small RNAs within viral infection by DENV and what their consequences are in aggravating the consequences of patients affected by this disease.

Keywords: dengue, miRNA, genetics, immunology, *Flavivirus*

1. Introduction

RNA interference (RNAi) is understood as the mechanism of gene silencing through transcription or post-transcription. Post-transcription gene silencing (PTGS) operates through translational repression induced by microRNAs (miRNAs), from precursors transcribed in the nucleus [1].

The silencing machinery by microRNAs directs mRNA to the P bodies present in the cytoplasm. They are deprived of the translation machinery and conserve proteins involved in the degradation of the target mRNA [2].

The natural functions of RNAi and their related processes appear to be the protection of the genome against invasion by mobile genetic elements, such as viruses and transposons, as well as the functioning of eukaryotic organism development programs [3, 4].

These analyses led to the identification of proteins encoded by the host involved in gene silencing. Also, they revealed that several enzymes or essential factors are common to these processes. Some components have identified to serve as initiators. In contrast, others serve as effectors, amplifiers, and transmitters for the gene silencing process [5].

The RNAi is widely used to fight viruses, due to the exposure of their genetic material in the intracellular environment at various stages of their replication cycle [6, 7]. Due to the distinction between viral and cellular genomes, the
chances of cross-silencing are low. In contrast, mutational changes in the viral genome allow mechanisms to escape interference pathways [8, 9].

2. miRNA

The microRNAs are defined as small single-stranded RNA molecules with approximately 19–25 nucleotides, not protein encoders, that act as mediators for the regulation of the posttranscriptional gene expression [10].

The first miRNA was described in 1993 and related to the regulation of larval development in Caenorhabditis elegans. However, understand that the miRNA class is the largest class of gene regulators, with around 1000 miRNAs. Promoting regulation is necessary to bind the 3’ untranslated region of the target mRNA [11].

There are more than 2500 miRNAs identified in the human genome. Although transcriptional targets are predicted, most of these have not been validated, which makes this area for investigation rich [6, 12]. Studies revealed that viruses encode miRNA, for example, Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), human cytomegalovirus (HCMV), and human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) [13].

miRNAs play essential roles in the cell, such as proliferation, differentiation, apoptosis, stress response, and transcriptional regulation. Studies have shown that miRNAs change their expression in several pathologies, increasing their importance and the need for a better understanding of this process [14].

2.1 miRNA biogenesis and mechanism of action

The miRNA biogenesis process consists of transcription, export, processing, and maturation, at the cytoplasmic and cellular levels. As a fundamental element of this miRNA transcription, RNA polymerases II and III are found, with the function of transcribing gene encoding proteins [12].

Currently, most of the identified miRNAs are intragenic and processed from introns. Simultaneously, the rest are intergenic and transcribed independently of a host gene and regulated by their promoters [15]. Sometimes, miRNAs are transcribed as a long transcript called “clusters,” which can have similar regions, and, in this case, are considered a family. miRNA biogenesis can be classified into two pathways: canonical and noncanonical (Figure 1) [5].

What defines the choice of these mechanisms is the complementarity between the bases of miRNA and mRNA. When there is perfect parity between the bases, degradation of the mRNAs will occur [16]. On the other hand, incomplete pairings generate inhibition of the translation of the target mRNA. Since miRNAs are small molecules, there is no need for complete pairing for binding. Thus, a miRNA can act in the regulation of several target mRNAs, or several miRNAs regulate a single mRNA [17].

2.1.1 Canonical pathway

The canonical pathway of biogenesis is the dominant pathway by which miRNAs are processed. In this way, pri-miRNAs are transcribed from their genes and processed into pre-miRNAs by the microprocessor complex, consisting of a protein that binds RNA to the critical region of DiGeorge syndrome 8 (DGCR8) and a ribonuclease III enzyme, Drosha [18]. DGCR8 recognizes an N6-methyladenylated GGAC and other motifs within the pri-miRNA [19]. At the same time, Drosha cleaves the duplex pri-miRNA based on the characteristic structure of the pri-miRNA, resulting in the formation of an excess of 2 nt 3’ in the pre-miRNA [20]. Once pre-miRNAs...
chances of cross-silencing are low. In contrast, mutational changes in the viral genome allow mechanisms to escape interference pathways [8, 9].

2. miRNA

The microRNAs are defined as small single-stranded RNA molecules with approximately 19–25 nucleotides, not protein encoders, that act as mediators for the regulation of the posttranscriptional gene expression [10].

The first miRNA was described in 1993 and related to the regulation of larval development in *Caenorhabditis elegans*. However, understand that the miRNA class is the largest class of gene regulators, with around 1000 miRNAs. Promoting regulation is necessary to bind the 3'untranslated region of the target mRNA [11].

There are more than 2500 miRNAs identified in the human genome. Although transcriptional targets are predicted, most of these have not been validated, which makes this area for investigation rich [6, 12]. Studies revealed that viruses encode miRNA, for example, Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), human cytomegalovirus (HCMV), and human immunodeficiency virus type 1 (HIV-1) [13].

miRNAs play essential roles in the cell, such as proliferation, differentiation, apoptosis, stress response, and transcriptional regulation. Studies have shown that miRNAs change their expression in several pathologies, increasing their importance and the need for a better understanding of this process [14].

2.1 miRNA biogenesis and mechanism of action

The miRNA biogenesis process consists of transcription, export, processing, and maturation, at the cytoplasmic and cellular levels. As a fundamental element of this miRNA transcription, RNA polymerases II and III are found, with the function of transcribing gene encoding proteins [12].

Currently, most of the identified miRNAs are intragenic and processed from introns. Simultaneously, the rest are intergenic and transcribed independently of a host gene and regulated by their promoters [15]. Sometimes, miRNAs are transcribed as a long transcript called "clusters," which can have similar regions, and, in this case, are considered a family. miRNA biogenesis can be classified into two pathways: canonical and noncanonical (Figure 1) [5].

What defines the choice of these mechanisms is the complementarity between the bases of miRNA and mRNA. When there is perfect parity between the bases, degradation of the mRNAs will occur [16]. On the other hand, incomplete pairings generate inhibition of the translation of the target mRNA. Since miRNAs are small molecules, there is no need for complete pairing for binding. Thus, a miRNA can act in the regulation of several target mRNAs, or several miRNAs regulate a single mRNA [17].

2.1.1 Canonical pathway

The canonical pathway of biogenesis is the dominant pathway by which miRNAs are processed. In this way, pri-miRNAs are transcribed from their genes and processed into pre-miRNAs by the microprocessor complex, consisting of a protein that binds RNA to the critical region 8 of Drosha and DiGeorge syndrome (DGCR8), and cleaves the pri-miRNA to produce the precursor miRNA (pre-miRNA). The mature miRNA is associated with the Argonaute (AGO) protein family forming a miRNA-induced silencing complex (miRISC). In noncanonical pathways, small hairpin RNA (shRNA) is initially cleaved by the microprocessor complex and exported to the cytoplasm via exportin 5/RanGTP, cleaved by AGO2, but this action is independent of Dicer (modified by Tanzer et al.) [21].

This processing involves removing the loop from the terminal, resulting in a mature miRNA duplex. The directionality of the miRNA chain determines the name of the mature miRNA form. The 5p chain emerges from the 5' end of the pre-miRNA hairpin, while the 3p chain originates from the 3' end. Both chains derived from the mature miRNA duplex can carry in the Argonaute family of proteins. miRNA chains that do not contain incompatibilities are cleaved by AGO2 and degraded by cellular machinery that can produce a strong chain bias. Otherwise, miRNA duplexes with central mismatches or miRNA not loaded with AGO2 are passively unwound and degraded [23].
2.1.2 Noncanonical pathway

Several noncanonical biogenesis pathways in miRNA are elucidated (Figure 1). These pathways make use of combinations of proteins involved in the canonical pathway, mainly Drosha, Dicer, exportin 5, and AGO2. The noncanonical miRNA can be grouped into Drosha-/DGCR8-independent and Dicer-independent pathways [24, 25].

The pre-miRNAs produced by the Drosha-/DGCR8-independent pathway resemble Dicer products. On the other hand, Dicer-independent miRNAs are processed by Drosha from endogenous RNA transcripts of hairpins. These pre-miRNAs require AGO2 to complete their maturation in the cytoplasm. They are of insufficient length to be the substrates for Dicer. That, in turn, promotes the loading of the entire pre-miRNA in the AGO2 slicing [26, 27].

2.1.3 Argonaute and TNRC6 proteins

The proteins of the Argonaute family are related to the RISC complex, as a member of the machinery of the RNAi pathways [28]. The highly conserved between species and several organisms encode several members of the family. Usually found in the cytoplasm are concentrated close to the P bodies [29].

Such proteins, therefore, act with the transcriptional and posttranscriptional silencing pathways. The main stage of the interference mechanism is the cleavage of mRNAs; the Argonaute protein in the RISC complex catalyzes this process [28].

Argonautes are applied in transcriptional and posttranscriptional gene silencing, acting through the modulation of the degradation or inhibition of the translation of specific mRNAs, when associated with miRNAs [18].

The miRNAs associated with Argonaute proteins constitute a more massive complex called the miRNA-induced silencing complex, which will suppress the expression of mRNAs. In addition to interference at the translational level, it shows that miRNAs can induce poly(A) tail deadening [18, 19]. Studies suggest that proteins of the TNRC6 family are essential components when associated with miRISCs, for the location of cytoplasmic P bodies and the gene silencing of mRNAs [19, 20].

3. miRNA and dengue virus

The dengue virus is a virus composed of a single-stranded positive RNA belonging to the family Flaviviridae. DENV serotypes have been identified (DENV-1 to DENV-4). All serotypes are causing similar diseases and similar symptoms, without significant severity and serious diseases, such as dengue hemorrhagic fever and dengue shock syndrome. The DENV genome is approximately 11 kb in length that encodes a single polyprotein. This polyprotein is cleaved posttranslationally by the host and viral proteases into three structural proteins (capsid C; pre-membrane/membrane, prM/M; envelope, E) and seven nonstructural proteins (NS1, NS2A, NS2B, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, and NS5) [30, 31].

The DENVs enter their target cells via receptor-mediated endocytosis in a clathrin-dependent manner. An acidified endosomal vesicle, virion, undergoes conformational changes that allow fusion and endosomal membrane and release RNA from the genome into the cytosol. After initial translation and cleavage of polyprotein, DENV triggers the formation of a replication complex in the perinuclear endoplasmic reticulum, and RNA replication and protein translation occur. Protein C then packages the newly synthesized positive RNA assembled into a virion, which
is covered with prM/E heterodimers. When the vesicles containing the immature virions move through the Golgi apparatus, the prM is cleaved by a furin protease. Finally, immature virions become mature or partially mature virions, which are secreted [32, 33].

### 3.1 Mosquitoes, miRNAs, and dengue

The functions that miRNA is involved in mosquitoes are related to posttranscriptional regulation of gene expression in physiological and immunological pathways and affect development, metabolism, host-pathogen interactions, and resistance to insecticides [34].

#### 3.1.1 Development and metabolism

The specific expression of the miRNA stage in the four stages of development (eggs, larvae, pupae, and adults) was confirmed using sequencing. Understand the role of regulated miRNAs in the development of the mosquito and the action of knocking down the expressed miRNAs in a specific way carried out in Ae. albopictus. The knockdown of aal-miR-286b and aal-miR-2942 decreased the hatching of embryos and the hatching rate of larvae, respectively, compared to the knock-in groups. Reduced longevity and fertility (aal-miR-1891) were observed in the knockdown groups for miR-1891 compared to the knock-in and control groups in adults. Female mosquitoes require sugar for energy metabolism and a blood meal for egg development. Recent studies have indicated that blood supply leads to the differential expression of many genes, proteins, and miRNAs. The abundance of miRNA differs under sugar-fed and blood-fed conditions; ast-miR-2796-5p was observed exclusively in sugar-fed. The depletion of aae-miR-275 in Ae. aegypti females led to severe defects in blood digestion, fluid excretion, and egg development. aae-miR-1890 is induced after blood feeding and reaches a peak of 24 PMB. The systemic depletion of aae-miR-1890 resulted in less egg development and deposition, suggesting that miR-1890 may be the key to mosquito blood digestion. In contrast to the upregulated miRNAs after blood feeding, some miRNAs were downregulated. For example, reduced ast-miR-989 was observed 72 h after a blood meal. aga-let7 decreased in the midgut and other parts/leftovers, but most miRNAs increased after blood feeding [35–37].

#### 3.1.2 Mosquitoes and dengue infection

The viruses of the Flavivirus genus are transmitted by mosquitoes and cause diseases, including dengue. It is observed that Cx. quinquefasciatus mosquitoes with West Nile virus (WNV) showed altered miR-92 and miR-989 expressions. In Aedes albopictus, the aae-miR-2940 miRNA is downregulated in response to WNV infection to restrict viral replication. In studies, the expressions of 35 miRNAs of mosquitoes modulating DENV infection in Aedes aegypti and more than 66 miRNAs were reported. Aedes albopictus is differentially expressed after DENV-2 infection. Therefore, aal-miR-34-5p and aal-miR-87 contribute to antipathogenic and immunological responses during DENV-2 infection. ae-miR-375 is the key to DENV replication, which can improve DENV-2 infection in an Ae. aegypti cell line. aae-miR-252 is three times more expressed after DENV-2 infection in Aedes albopictus cell line (C6/36); this inhibited DENV replication by suppressing the expression of the envelope protein of DENV. Regarding aal-miR-281, an abundant miRNA specific to the midgut, it was found that it facilitates the replication of DENV-2 in Aedes albopictus [36, 37].
4. miRNA impact on DENV infection

Studies have demonstrated the importance of miRNAs in viral infections. Mutations in the main catalytic components of the RNA interference pathway led to an increase in DENV replication in mammalian cells (Figure 2) [38]. Studies that analyzed the expression of miRNA in the blood of patients with dengue demonstrated a large number of miRNAs expressed differently in response to dengue infections [35]. About 348 miRNAs were described with different expressions in patients with dengue. Interestingly, studies have also identified 17 miRNAs that could use to distinguish between mild and severe dengue with complications [39].

The expressions of miR-24-1-5p, miR-512-5p, and miR-4640-3p were able to distinguish mild dengue from those with liver complications. At the same time, miR-383 was significantly more expressed in dengue with mild clinical status than those diagnosed with severe dengue and accumulation of body fluids [40, 41].

Studies have also shown 12 miRNAs with negative regulation and 41 with positive regulation in the serum of patients infected with DENV-1 when compared to the control group. Among these miRNAs we highlight hsa-miR-21-5p, hsa-miR-146a-5p, hsa-miR-590-5p, hsa-miR-188-5p, and hsa-miR-152-3p that were identified as promising invasive molecular markers for the detection of DENV infection [42, 43].

The microRNAs miR-21-5p and miR146a-5p are involved in inflammation and cell proliferation. They are expressed significantly concerning the control group, indicating their sensitivity and specificity as indicators of DENV infection. Besides, both miRNAs are correlated with the number of leukocytes and neutrophils. These findings suggested that some miRNAs could be used as diagnostic markers for DENV infections [44].

Effective disruption of host RNAi machinery is one of the pathogenic strategies of viruses to mitigate the host's response. Several viruses have reported producing protein suppressors through RNAi to cause silencing in infected cells, thereby
interfering with RISC’s loading or inhibiting the cutting activity of the AGO protein, a component of RISC and the biogenesis of miRNAs. DENV also has such suppressors that could neutralize the host’s RNAi response. NS4B has reported suppressing host RNAi, interfering with the processing of Dicer, a key protein in miRNA biogenesis [38]. It has also reported that NS1 protein can interfere with apoptosis through miRNA-15 and miRNA-16 [5]. The NS3 protein has shown to interfere with the AGO1 protein [46].

5. miRNAs and the inhibition of viral replication

The miRNAs generally induce translational repression by binding to target mRNAs. Thus, it is not surprising that most of the miRNAs identified so far have DENV replication. The evidence points to the fact that miRNAs bind complementarily to the DENV 5’UTR or 3’UTR genome and thus inhibit DENV replication. The miR-548 g-3p represented the first evidence that a miRNA suppresses DENV multiplication by directly linking it to the viral genome. In the study, they showed that miR-548 g-3p was able to bind to the stem-loop A (SLA) promoter at 5’UTR, which is a crucial element for DENV RNA synthesis and replication, and uncontrolled replication of DENV-1. This inhibitory effect was proposed to arise from the binding of miR-548 g-3p to SLA, which could make it physically difficult, and thus attenuated the interaction between the SLA promoter and NS5. This DENV protein contains a C-dependent RNA-terminal RNA polymerase domain [45, 47].

Their hypothesis suggests that a functional miRNA has been preserved among all DENV serotypes and is present in the 3’UTR. The three dengue serotypes, miR-133a, miR-484, and miR-744, are involved in DENV replication, genome circularization, and viral viability. The overexpression of miR-133a, miR-484, and miR-744 in Vero cells had been experimentally validated to show the potencies of these three miRNAs in inhibiting DENV replication [48]. In another study, it found that miR-252 can inhibit DENV-2 replication in cell culture. The identification of protein E as a target for this miRNA is interesting since it has an indispensable role for viral entry [49, 50].

6. miRNAs that modulate host factors to inhibit or facilitate DENV replication

The DENV virus depends on its host’s machinery for replication and infection, and it is not surprising that several miRNAs have shown to indirectly regulate DENV replication through modulation of host factors or the immune response. These indirect effects included modulation of the expression of a cell transcript that encodes a host factor necessary for one or a few stages of the viral cycle. The modulation of receptor expression can regulate virus entry, tropism, and essential cofactors for replication or translation that can impair or increase viral replication and the production of viral proteins. Also, miRNAs can increase or restrict cellular responses to viral infection, such as immune response or defense mechanisms [51].

The miRNA let-7c is highly expressed in Huh-7 cells and may be related to the protection of infected cells from oxidative stress and the response to inflammation after DENV infection. Let-7c has shown to bind directly to the basic transcription factor-1 of the leucine zipper (BACH1), a potent repressor of the anti-inflammatory and antioxidant protein heme oxygenase-1 (HO-1), and to dysregulate infection by DENV-2 and DENV-4. In this way, let-7c is probably able to protect the host from virus-induced infection [49].
In addition to modulating the host’s immune response, miRNA may have antiviral actions. An example is miR-223, capable of inhibiting DENV-2 replication; its antiviral effect is probably associated with attenuated expression of the microtubule-destabilizing protein, stathmin 1 (STMN1), a key regulator of protein microtubules that controls microtubule dynamics [52]. The exact mechanism of how STMN1 affected DENV-2 replication is not yet known. However, studies have shown that an intact microtubule network involved in STMN1 sequestration was essential for HMCV to establish an infection. As such, it is highly likely that STMN1 is playing a similar role in establishing controlled microtubule dynamics in the context of DENV infection [53].

It is important to emphasize that despite all studies and the discovery of several miRNAs associated with cell regulation positively or negatively, better clarification of the processes involving miRNAs and DENV is still needed.

6.1 Perspective

6.1.1 Diagnostic using miRNA

As already reported in this chapter, several human diseases were induced due to differential miRNA expressions. Recently, several studies have confirmed the vibrant role of miRNAs in the successful regulation of various biological processes through the synergistic effects of the multiple miRNA networks, an integrated way to control an individual gene [17].

Also, several physiological functions (such as development, infection, immune response, inflammation, tumor genesis, and regulation of bone mass) have suggested being controlled by miRNAs. The miRNAs can regulate gene expression at the posttranscriptional level of more than 50% of the protein-coding genes in humans.

The miRNAs were found to play roles in helping and defending viruses. Mammalian miRNA genes generally exist in the noncoding region of the genes. However, they also occur both in the exonic regions of the gene encoding protein 16, and in alternative exon splicing, it can also regulate the expression of miRNA intergenic genes. Study results show a role for unregulated autophagy in the pathogenesis of some RNA viruses. In this context, the positive regulation of hsa-miR-31 and the negative regulations of hsa-miR-493, hsa-miR-889, hsa-miR-655, hsa-miR-656, hsa-miR-26a-1, hsa-miR-154, hsa-miR-335, hsa-miR-1197, and hsa-miR-146a improve innate antiviral responses in cells infected by the virus [26].

Thus, this study aimed at the expression of these miRNAs during dengue infection; in this way, monitoring possible changes can be used as a complementary diagnostic method for faster interventions that can prevent more severe clinical conditions in patients infected with dengue.

6.1.2 Role of RNAi in dengue therapy

To date, miRNAs are used against some viruses that cause disease in humans, including influenza viruses, hepatitis C viruses, hepatitis B viruses, human immunodeficiency virus type 1, polio, and DENV. These viruses are characterized by the presence of ssRNA genomes, which are potential targets for RNAi in the cytoplasm. This functional interaction occurred during the removal and replication of viral RNA [15, 54].

Any changes in the miRNA pathway may shed light on why some mosquitoes are specific vectors for arthropod-borne virus infections (arboviruses), while others are not. The first evidence is the interference of Sindbis viruses that express the
recombinant part of the non-inconsequential unrelated RNA (DENV-2), with the replication of DENV-2 in mosquitoes (Egyptian Aedes) through a system such as the silencing mechanism in plants [55].

Potential evidence may be involved with the interaction of dsRNA or siRNA derived from the arbovirus genome. Mammals have thousands of Piwi-interacting RNA genes from producer types of microRNA regulation expression to control the various stages of cell development and physiology. The critical role of RNAi is a defense against viruses in primary organisms, but in mammals, it is the antiviral defense mechanism hitherto controversial. Currently, it is a conserved mechanism of RNAi in mammals, where its introduction to siRNA affects the silent replication of viruses. Currently, the most significant therapeutic attempt using miRNA is to block the “shutdown” actions of genes that end up facilitating viral replication [41, 42].

7. Conclusions

It is possible to conclude that miRNA has an important relationship during DENV infection, and this regulation can be positive for the virus, that is, facilitating the entry of the virus and helping in the replication process, but it is important to emphasize that there are miRNAs that can also have antiviral action, thereby blocking viral replication.

The miRNA studies demonstrate how important this small RNAi is for viral infections, whether in arthropod vectors like mosquitoes or mammals like humans. One of the significant difficulties in the study of miRNA is the difficulty of understanding all of its relationships within the cell. Thus, further studies are needed to elucidate more forcefully what the functions of each miRNA are with the cell cycle and the viral replication cycle. Nevertheless, these RNAs have been bringing great perspectives both in treatment and as markers for DENV.

Acknowledgements

I thank the colleagues who contributed to this work and the institutions that helped in the preparation of this text.

Conflict of interest

The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Notes/thanks/other declarations

The authors thank everyone who contributed to the elaboration of this text.
Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

Author details

Samir Casseb* and Karla de Melo
Evandro Chagas Institute, Ananindeua, Brazil

*Address all correspondence to: samircasseb@iec.gov.br

© 2020 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.

References


References


Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective


Chapter 7

Phage Display as a Strategy to Obtain Anti-flavivirus Monoclonal Antibodies

Isaura Beatriz Borges Silva, Renato Kaylan Alves de Oliveira França, Jacyelly Medeiros Silva, Andrea Queiroz Maranhão and Carlos Roberto Prudencio

Abstract

Arbovirus of the Flaviviridae family represents an issue worldwide, particularly because it can lead to serious illness and death in some countries. There is still a great complexity in obtaining effective therapies and specific and sensitive diagnostic tests, due to the high antigenic similarity between them. This similarity may account for antibodies cross reactivity which has positive and negative consequences for the course of infectious diseases. Among dengue virus (DENV) infections, the cross-reactivity can increase virus replication and the risk of a severe disease by a mechanism known as an antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE). The search for serological biomarkers through monoclonal antibodies (MAbs) that identify unique viral regions can assist in the differential detection, whereas the development of recombinant antibodies with a neutralizing potential can lead to the establishment of efficacious treatments. The Phage Display methodology emerged as one of the main alternatives for the selection of human MAbs with high affinity for a specific target. Therefore, this technology can be a faster alternative for the development of specific diagnostic platforms and efficient and safe treatments for flavivirus infections. In this context, we propose for this chapter a discussion about Phage Display as a strategy to obtain MAbs for DENV and other flaviviruses.

Keywords: antibody, Phage Display, dengue virus, flavivirus, therapy, diagnosis

1. Introduction

When thinking about the development of virus detection and neutralization technologies whose bases of action are immunoglobulins, it is necessary to understand the structure of the viral particle of interest. In addition to the sequence of amino acid residues that make up the target epitopes, their position in the particle and their function in the process of infection and viral replication influence the design experiments aiming the obtantion of antibodies with a diagnostic and therapeutic potential. The structures of flavivirus have been determined and studied, mainly, by combining cryo-electron microscopy with data from X-ray diffraction experiments.
Chapter 7

Phage Display as a Strategy to Obtain Anti-flavivirus Monoclonal Antibodies

Isaura Beatriz Borges Silva, Renato Kaylan Alves de Oliveira França, Jacyelly Medeiros Silva, Andrea Queiroz Maranhão and Carlos Roberto Prudencio

Abstract

Arbovirus of the Flaviviridae family represents an issue worldwide, particularly because it can lead to serious illness and death in some countries. There is still a great complexity in obtaining effective therapies and specific and sensitive diagnostic tests, due to the high antigenic similarity between them. This similarity may account for antibodies cross reactivity which has positive and negative consequences for the course of infectious diseases. Among dengue virus (DENV) serotype infections, the cross-reactivity can increase virus replication and the risk of a severe disease by a mechanism known as an antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE). The search for serological biomarkers through monoclonal antibodies (MAbs) that identify unique viral regions can assist in the differential detection, whereas the development of recombinant antibodies with a neutralizing potential can lead to the establishment of efficacious treatments. The Phage Display methodology emerged as one of the main alternatives for the selection of human MAbs with high affinity for a specific target. Therefore, this technology can be a faster alternative for the development of specific diagnostic platforms and efficient and safe treatments for flavivirus infections. In this context, we propose for this chapter a discussion about Phage Display as a strategy to obtain MAbs for DENV and other flaviviruses.

Keywords: antibody, Phage Display, dengue virus, flavivirus, therapy, diagnosis

1. Introduction

When thinking about the development of virus detection and neutralization technologies whose bases of action are immunoglobulins, it is necessary to understand the structure of the viral particle of interest. In addition to the sequence of amino acid residues that make up the target epitopes, their position in the particle and their function in the process of infection and viral replication influence the design experiments aiming the obtanion of antibodies with a diagnostic and therapeutic potential.

The structures of flavivirus have been determined and studied, mainly, by combining cryo-electron microscopy with data from X-ray diffraction experiments
using crystallography of viral proteins in the presence or not of antibody molecules. Results of this combination showed that the flavivirus is composed of a dense icosahedral electron nucleus and a lipid bilayer surrounding it. The genome comprises a sequence of ~10,700 nucleotides of a positive-sense RNA that encodes a polyprotein that is cleaved in 3 structural proteins, capsid protein (C), membrane protein (M), and envelope protein (E), and in 7 nonstructural proteins, NS1, NS2A, NS2B, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, and NS5 [1]. The NS1 protein plays a role in viral replication and is often shown to be a soluble antigen secreted into the bloodstream, interacting with components of the immune system. NS5 is the largest and most conserved non-structural protein and acts in the transcription process of viral RNA [2, 3].

The icosahedral capsid is small and poorly organized, but it provides enough space for the genome and is surrounded by the envelope, so there are few connections between these structures, unlike what is found in other viruses. The viral envelope consists of two internal and concentric layers of phospholipids and an outer protein shell formed by regions of protein M and ectodomains of glycoprotein E organized in dimers which present protein determinants for the binding of the virus to the host cell (hemagglutination). Protein E contains three domains: domain I (D1), which is related to cell tropism and envelope organization; domain II (DII), which comprises the dimerization region and the fusion peptide; and domain III (DIII) with the function of binding to cell receptors, in the initial stage of viral infection [4, 5].

The fusion loop is a highly conserved region between dengue virus (DENV) serotypes and all flaviviruses, responsible for the late stage of infection, in which the virus interacts with the endosomal membrane, resulting in the release of the nucleocapsid in the cytoplasm. When the particle is in the lysosomal vesicle during the infection process, a structural reorganization of the viral envelope occurs; the fusion loop is exposed and inserted in the lysosomal membrane. After the formation of the fusion loop contact, protein E starts to organize itself into trimmers, resulting in the expansion of the viral particle and the approximation of the viral and lysosomal membranes, forming the fusion lipid pore that allows the release of the viral genome to the cytoplasm [3, 6, 7].

DENV serotypes show great heterogeneity in the structure of viral proteins. However, there is also antigenic similarity between DENV serotypes and, for some peptide sequences, between flaviviruses. Phylogeny studies of virus sequences, by estimating the antigenic distance between them, concluded that serotypes 1 and 3 are the most similar, serotype 2 was the second to diverge evolutionarily, and serotype 4 is the one that presents greater genetic difference. There is a 32% difference in the structure of protein E of the four DENV serotypes. Specific mutations in the genome result in the antigenic variability found in each serotype [7–9].

Much of the genetic difference between flaviviruses is due to protein E, which can show up to 60% difference in its amino acid sequence. In the phylogenetic analysis of the viruses, the DENV serotypes are closer to the Zika virus (ZIKV), with approximately 45% difference, and have 50 and 60% dissimilarity with West Nile virus (WNV) and yellow fever virus (YFV), respectively. DENV and other flaviviruses vary dramatically in terms of the amino acid sequence of the glycosylation region and the content of glycans added to the surface of E and precursor membrane protein (prM). Many epitopes of protein E are unique to a DENV serotype [4, 9–11]. It can also be observed in ZIKV, which has the glycosylation site, in the DI of protein E, different in conformation and length of the loop that contains this glycosylation site. The carbohydrate associated with this residue can act as a virus binding site in host cells. Thus, differences in this region of glycosylation can influence cell tropism, infection, and pathogenesis of these viruses [12]. Another important characteristic of ZIKV is the insertion of an alanine residue in the carboxyl termination of DIII, which is associated with an increased stability of this virus [13].
The hydrophobic sequence of the fusion loop appears to be the only epitope that is conserved among all flaviviruses; however, the degree of exposure in this region varies substantially among viruses [6]. Nonstructural proteins, NS1 and NS5, also present some epitopes conserved among the DENV serotypes and other members of the flavivirus genus, but their position also varies between viral strains. The relationships of antigenic similarity between flaviviruses generate immune responses that are configured as cross-reactions with protective or pathological characteristics [5, 14, 15].

2. Immunoglobulins

Immunoglobulins, or antibodies, are glycoproteins, expressed on the surface of B cells or secreted, that act in the neutralization and elimination of pathogens [16]. Antibodies are relatively flexible “Y”-shaped molecules made up of two heavy chains and two light chains, joined by an extensive network of non-covalent interactions, stabilized by disulfide bonds. Both types of chains are composed of constant and variable domains. The constant regions determine the functional properties of the antibody, and the variable regions determine the antigen-binding site. The light chain consists of a variable portion (VL) and a constant portion (CL) that can have two types of domains, kappa (κ) or lambda (λ). The heavy chain consists of a variable portion (VH) and three or four constant portions, depending on the class of the antibody, which are CH1, CH2, CH3, and CH4. The type of heavy chain determines the class, or isotype, of antibody, such as IgA, IgG, IgD, IgE, and IgM [17].

The antibody molecule can be subdivided into portions of the crystallizable fragment (Fc) and antigen-binding fragment (Fab) region. The Fc portion has the constant domains (CH2, CH3, CH4), and the Fab portion consists of the VH-CH1 and VL-CL domains. The Fab portion retains the ability to bind to the antigen, and the Fc portion acts to mediate the effector functions of antibodies [17].

Three segments containing variability can be identified in both the VH and VL domains. These segments are the hypervariable regions that determine antigen specificity and are more commonly called complementarity-determining regions (CDRs)—CDR1, CDR2, and CDR3. The combination of CDRs from a VH with CDRs from a VL forms the region of interaction with the epitope, called the paratope [17]. The variability of the antigen-binding regions is responsible for the ability of different antibodies to bind to many structurally diverse antigens [18]. Figure 1 represents the structure of an IgG immunoglobulin and its domains.

In cognate antigen recognition, some naïve B cells can initiate somatic hypermutation, generating new variable domains, that can be selected based on their ability of antigen binding, usually with high affinity compared to germinal domains. After antigen recognition, naïve B cells differentiate into antibody-secreting plasma cells. These plasma cells secrete antibodies with high affinity and, can differentiate into memory B cells. Memory B cells are highly specialized cells for quickly recognizing the antigen in subsequent exposure, can persist for years, and provide long-term humoral protection for decades. These functional features of memory B cells are the basis of effective vaccines [19].

The knowledge about the mechanisms of antibody production and clonal selection of B cells led to the development of innovative hybridoma technology in 1975 [20]. The technique is based on the fusion of B lymphocytes with myeloma cells giving rise to hybrid cells that produce monoclonal antibodies (MABS) continuously in vitro [21]. Therefore, MABS are monovalent antibodies, which bind to the same epitope and are produced from a single B lymphocyte clone.
MAbs interact with a single epitope allowing a specific reactivity and affinity for target antigens. This feature is a great advantage over polyclonal antibodies, which have different epitope specificities and affinities [22, 23]. For this reason, MAbs have a broad clinical applicability in therapy for various illness, including cancer, transplant rejection, and autoimmune, infectious, hematologic, and cardiovascular diseases. Moreover, MAbs can play a significant role in the diagnosis and as antibody-drug conjugate for drug delivery. Thus, MAbs are considered a powerful tool for a wide range of medical applications.

2.1 Cross-reactivity of antibodies

Antibodies that bind to different flaviviruses are able to promote both the neutralization of the infection and the increase of the virus capture, such as by the interaction of immune complexes with Fc receptors expressed in certain cell types. The creation of alternative routes of entry of the viral particle into cells by low-neutralizing antibodies, during secondary infections of flavivirus, results in increased levels of viral replication and pathogenicity. This mechanism constitutes a phenomenon called antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) [24, 25].

Different studies have been conducted to understand the effects of cross-reactive memory antibodies on subsequent flavivirus exposures. Many of them reported that the opsonization of the virus with weakly neutralizing antibodies led to the increase of the viral production and of pro-inflammatory mediators. This could lead to the suppression of the antiviral immune response, worsening the clinical condition of the disease [5, 7]. ADE has already been reported in in vitro experiments of infection of cells that express Fc receptors and in vivo experiments.
of vaccination with flavivirus [11, 26]. From the results of these experiments, ADE is pointed out as one of the main causes of severe forms of DENV infection and of the low protection induced by vaccines targeting DENV serotypes [27].

An opposite effect of cross-reacting antibodies has also been demonstrated, an increase in protection against secondary infections by flavivirus, which has resulted in potent neutralization and rapid induction of affinity maturing immune responses against heterologous flaviviruses. Studies in endemic areas of flavivirus showed protection against Zika virus infection in patients with a previous experience with DENV. A humoral response capable of potentially neutralizing both species of flavivirus was assembled from the expansion of cross-reaction memory B cell clones, even in the absence of DENV circulation. Thus, previous flavivirus infections can lead to both cross-neutralization and increased pathogenicity of the virus through the formation of interspecific antibody memory [28, 29].

The potential of cross-reaction immunity to trigger protection or pathology depends on the profile, quality, and magnitude of the immune responses induced by antibodies. The ADE reaction is a factor that should be considered in the development of therapeutic antibodies and vaccines for infections by flavivirus. Different approaches have been tested to shift the ADE profile to a cross-protection profile in heterogeneous infections of these viruses.

3. Phage Display

The principle of the Phage Display is the presentation of libraries of molecules on the surface of a bacteriophage (phage), allowing the identification of a wide range of biomolecules, including peptides, antibodies, and other proteins. The Phage Display methodology was first described in 1985, by George Smith and colleagues. Through the expression (display) of polypeptides on the phage surface (phage) M13, it was possible to perform the mapping of antibody epitopes by screening them using random peptide libraries [30]. In 1990, McCafferty and colleagues [31] demonstrated that it was also possible to fuse genes that encode an entire antibody domain, in the form of a scFv to the sequence of one of the bacteriophage’s coat proteins. This approach allowed that this methodology could also be used for the selection of bacteriophages that recognize antigens.

Later, in 1994, Winter refined the Phage Display technology through a guided selection strategy of human antibody fragments from Phage Display repertoires for a single-antigen epitope, using rodent MAbs as a model [32]. The first all-human antibody produced, using Winter’s Phage Display technique, to be marketed for use in humans was adalimumab (Humira), approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 2002 for the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis [33]. It is noteworthy that George P. Smith and Gregory P. Winter received the Nobel Prize in chemistry in 2018 for the Phage Display of peptides and antibodies (Nobel Prize, 2018), a true tool for molecular evolution in vitro emphasizing the importance of this technique in obtaining biomolecules for various applications.

Phages are single-stranded viruses that infect Gram-negative bacteria and are used mainly for the purpose of gene cloning and expression of recombinant proteins, in addition to basic molecular biology studies. The particle coating is composed of five different proteins, pI, pIII, pVI, pVII, pVIII, and pIX; proteins responsible for DNA replication include pII, pV, and pX; and the assembly proteins are pl, pIV, and pXI. All of the five proteins contribute to the stability of the phage particle; however, pIII is also necessary for the recognition and infection of the host cell [33]. Through genetic manipulation, sequences of billions of peptides, protein variants, and antibody fragments can be cloned into a vector associated with the
phage coat protein gene, the pIII protein being the most commonly used [34]. Thus, the Phage Display methodology explores the possibility of direct binding of a certain protein (phenotype) with its cognate gene (genotype) by means of a phage [35].

3.1 Antibody Phage Display

Beyond the Phage Display and hybridoma technique, other strategies used for MAb production include immortalization of human B lymphocyte isolated from naturally infected or immunized individuals. One of the approaches for B lymphocyte immortalization is using Epstein-Barr virus (EBV). EBV is a human tumor virus that was shown to infect efficiently human B lymphocytes and induce continuous proliferation in vitro, opening a new perspective for the production of human MAbs [36]. Another relevant alternative for MAb production involves transgenic animals where mice are genetically manipulated to produce human immunoglobulin. In this strategy, genes of human immunoglobulins are inserted into mice genome replacing the endogenous sequences, making these animals capable to produce fully human antibodies when immunized with an antigen [37].

Among the existing methodologies of antibody production, the hybridoma technique remains the most widely used. However, the production steps are laborious and dependent on the animal immune system. In addition, the heterologous character of these proteins often makes them immunogenic to humans, provoking the response of human anti-mouse antibodies (HAMA), which restrict their therapeutic use [34]. Therefore, the Phage Display has emerged as one of the main alternatives for the generation of human recombinant MAbs. The major advantages of using the Phage Display, in contrast to the hybridoma technique, are clearly the absence of the use of animals in the process and the less time to obtain antibodies. The conventional method requires immunization which, depending on the type of antigen, can take weeks to produce sufficient immune response to produce specific antibodies [38].

There are important advantages and disadvantages between techniques for obtaining human M Abs. With the Phage Display technology, it is possible to isolate antibodies against all types of antigens, even those with high complexity; differently, the immortalization technique of human lymphocytes does not allow the isolation of antibodies against own antigens or non-immunogenic antigens [39]. In addition, only the Phage Display allows the optimization of MAbs, for example, by affinity maturation, and in general, the development of antibodies on the Phage Display tends to be faster than in other methods [40].

In addition to being robust due to the high stability of the phage, the Phage Display also allows control over biochemical parameters throughout the selection process. The particular advantage of having control over biochemical parameters during the time of selection can also be used to shape the specificity profile of an antibody from the start [41]. Table 1 described the MAbs with FDA approval that was developed using the Phage Display technique.

Since 1990, different antibody formats have been employed in the construction of antibody Phage Display libraries (APDLs). Although antibody libraries are one of the most successful tools of Phage Display, the appropriate choice of antibody library is an important step for the success of antibody selection. Full-length antibodies in the immunoglobulin format are large (150 kDa), complex, and not suitable for Phage Display. Therefore, smaller antigen-binding fragments are used. For this reason, APDLs are in most cases constructed in either scFv (25 kDa), Fab (50 kDa), or single-domain antibody (sdAb) formats which are smaller and more effective, although each antibody format has its own advantages and limitations [42]. Particularly, sdAbs have received a growing interest as a promising antibody
particularly, sdAbs have received a growing interest as a promising antibody format which are smaller and more suitable for Phage Display. Therefore, smaller antigen-binding fragments are used. Antibodies in the immunoglobulin format are large (150 kDa), complex, and not library is an important step for the success of antibody selection. Full-length antibodies from the start [41].

There are important advantages and disadvantages between techniques for the generation of human recombinant MAbs. The major advantages of using the Phage Display technique are clearly the absence of the tumor virus that was shown to infect efficiently human B lymphocytes and induce continuous proliferation in vitro, opening a new perspective for the production of human MAbs [36]. Another relevant alternative for MAb production involves immortalization of human B lymphocyte isolated into mice genome replacing the endogenous sequences, making these animals capable to produce fully human antibodies when immunized with an antigen [37].

Among the existing methodologies of antibody production, the hybridoma technique remains the most widely used. However, the production steps are laborious and dependent on the animal immune system. In addition, the heterologous character of these proteins often makes them immunogenic to humans, provoking the toxicity of some antigens and some ethical issues, which consequently impair the feasibility to be explored for understanding the humoral responses in the specific disease. However, some limitations regarding this library are associated with the toxicity of some antigens and some ethical issues, which consequently impair the feasibility to active immunization of humans or other animals for obtention of antibody repertoires [41, 44].

The naïve APLD involves the generation of libraries that allows the discovery of MAbs against all types of antigen. These libraries are produced through the repertoires of healthy donors, and antibody genes contained have much more diversity than immune libraries. The main advantage of using naïve libraries is the possibility to isolate MAbs against non-immunogenic and toxic antigens. However, the major drawback is that the selected MAbs often have low affinities compared with antibodies from immune libraries [33]. The semisynthetic APLD is based on the display of artificially made diversity in V-gene segments, usually by in vitro randomization of CDRs from a limited number of naïve variable regions, reconstructing the V-gene repertoires [41]. One of the characteristics of these libraries is the absence of natural biases and redundancies usually found in a naïve library. Unlike semisynthetic APLDs, the

### Table 1

Monoclonal antibodies obtained by Phage Display with FDA approval.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibody</th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Company</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Humira adalimumab</td>
<td>TNF-α</td>
<td>Human</td>
<td>Rheumatoid arthritis and Crohn’s disease</td>
<td>Abbott</td>
<td>2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucentis Ranibizumab</td>
<td>VEGF-A</td>
<td>Humanized</td>
<td>Macular degeneration</td>
<td>Genentech</td>
<td>2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simponi Golimumab</td>
<td>TNF-α</td>
<td>Human</td>
<td>Rheumatoid arthritis</td>
<td>Johnson &amp; Johnson</td>
<td>2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benlysta Belimumab</td>
<td>BLys</td>
<td>Human</td>
<td>Systemic lupus erythematosus</td>
<td>GSK</td>
<td>2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pending Raxibacumab</td>
<td>PA</td>
<td>Human</td>
<td>Anthrax infection <em>(Bacillus anthracis)</em></td>
<td>GSK</td>
<td>2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyramza Ramucirumab</td>
<td>VEGFR2</td>
<td>Human</td>
<td>Gastric cancer</td>
<td>Lilly</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bavencio Avelumab</td>
<td>PD-L1</td>
<td>Human</td>
<td>Merkel cell carcinoma</td>
<td>Serono</td>
<td>2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tremfya Guselkumab</td>
<td>IL-23</td>
<td>Human</td>
<td>Plaque psoriasis</td>
<td>Janssen Biotech</td>
<td>2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gamifant Emapalumab</td>
<td>IFNγ</td>
<td>Human</td>
<td>Hemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis</td>
<td>Swiss</td>
<td>2018</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*TNF-α, tumor necrosis factor alpha; VEGF-A, vascular endothelial growth factor A; BLys, B lymphocyte stimulator; PA, protective antigen; VEGFR2, vascular endothelial growth factor receptor 2; PD-L1, programmed death-ligand 1; IL-23, interleukin-23; IFNγ, interferon-γ*
fully synthetic library is constructed through the incorporation of nucleotide randomization based on in silico design and de novo synthesis. This refined synthesis appears to increase the functional size of library and consequently the isolation of MAbs with a great range of affinity. However, they still need to be optimized regarding their binding sites, affinity, valency, and other characteristics [41, 44].

Except in the case of fully synthetic libraries, generally, the construction of an antibody library is based on the amplification of the repertoire of the variable chain genes of one or more individuals using primers that cover all families of this gene. Subsequently, a random combination of the VL and VH chain is generated. In the case of the production of Fab libraries, a step is taken to join each variable chain fragment with its respective constant region. The PCR products of these amplifications, representing the antibody repertoire, are ligated into a phagemid vector and transformed into E. coli. However, phage vectors generally have only the origin of replication of the phage; they do not contain all the genes necessary for replication and assembly of these phages. Thus, screening libraries using this phagemid requires a helper phage to provide replication and assembly proteins. The addition of the phage to the bacterial cells transformed with the phagemid will result in the production of a mixture of phages that will present predominantly the phagemid vector [45].

Once assembled, each phage exposes a fragment of functional antibody fused to one of the phage surface proteins [46, 47]. A determining factor for the quality of a library and consequently the success of a biopanning by Phage Display is its initial diversity, given by the number of different antibodies in the library. The greater the initial diversity of clones within the library, the greater the likelihood of containing sequences that will bind to a given target with greater affinity [45]. The capacity to produce very large libraries (10^{12} different clones) has turned the Phage Display into a fast and reliable high-throughput screening methodology [43].

Most biopanning methods are based on four main steps, preparing a library; incubation of that library with a given antigen; removal of nonspecific or low-affinity phages; and recovery of binding targets, which will be amplified after infection in E. coli and used in the next biopanning cycle (Figure 2). The Phage Display biopanning process is characterized by an increase in the number of clones with affinity for the target molecule through successive selection cycles, with a consequent reduction in the diversity of clones and in the presence of clones with low affinity [48]. Thus, the biopanning results in the sequential enrichment of phages that have a specific binding to the antigen.

These biopanning steps are usually repeated three to five times, until a high specificity/affinity ligand is identified [34, 45, 46]. During biopanning, phage binding to the antigen is retained on the plate, and, after a series of washes, these phages are eluted and amplified. Subsequently, the phages are again incubated with the antigen in the next cycle. Phages with low affinity for antigens may stick to the plate, not interacting with the particle, or remain suspended in the solution. After the wash step, many of these nonspecific phages are removed. Generally, this step involves the application of a greater wash stringency in each subsequent round, which can be performed by increasing the number of washes or increasing the concentration of the nonionic detergent buffer used.

3.2 Post-selection step

During the biopanning stage, it is possible to monitor the enrichment of antibodies by measuring the phage titers that enter the selection and the phage titers that are eluted, assessing the enrichment ratio at each selection cycle. The enrichment follow-up provides the assurance that the selection was carried out
efficiently and is followed by the analysis of the selection progress and the identification of the antibodies that have greater affinity to the target antigen [49]. Over the decades, different ways of analyzing selection have been reported, depending on the selection system employed, the antibody library used, and the antigen of interest. However, two methods stand out for the quality of the results they offer, a monoclonal analysis of a sample of the selected antibodies and a polyclonal analysis of the sequences of the entire antibody population.

From the population of selected phages or using cultures of the selected soluble antibodies, the specific binding of individual clones to the immobilized antigen is assessed in an ELISA assay. In this monoclonal ELISA, the binding of 30–100, or more, randomly chosen clones is compared with each other and with the negative control. Phages with the highest absorbance values are considered the ones that have displayed functionally antibodies of greater affinity. Positive clones for the binding analysis are subjected to a Sanger sequencing reaction to determine the sequences of the antibodies [50–52]. In this type of Phage Display analysis, the phenotypes (activity) of the antibodies are investigated first and then their genotype is determined. The disadvantage of this type of analysis is that it does not allow exploring the antibody population in depth and may not include all antibodies of greater affinity. In addition, it does not allow the study of the magnitude of selection and enrichment [53].

A high-throughput sequencing provides a tool for rapid analysis of the selection and direct identification of the most enriched antibodies, with greater affinity,
without requiring a step of their expression. In addition to the speed of analysis, it is possible to investigate the original diversity of the library; identify all antibodies that enriched, the most enriched, and the rare in the population; and determine the frequency of increase throughout the selection. This is possible because sequencing technologies, called next-generation sequencing (NGS), are used, and they allow sequencing a large number of sequences, in the order of millions, in the same sequencing reaction [54]. The interpretation of NGS results from antibody libraries requires the use of a bioinformatics tool specialized in calculating the enrichment of variable domains in a selection of Phage Display. Different tools for this purpose are described in the literature, such as the recent ATTILA pipeline [55].

Despite providing a profound assessment of all antibodies in all cycles, two major problems arise in the analysis of biopanning by sequencing. The first corresponds to the noise in the identified final sequences that results from the sequencing process or the gene amplification reaction. However, more accurate pipelines for isolating DNA libraries for sequencing and more powerful bioinformatics analysis programs have been produced to overcome the artifacts introduced by PCR and sequencing errors. The second is the limitation of the high-performance sequencing methodology that, although it allows the sequencing of millions of sequences, can only properly read up to 400 base pairs. Therefore, this analysis requires that the variable domains of the heavy and light chain of antibodies, whose size ranges from 300 to 400 base pairs, be amplified and sequenced separately, resulting in the loss of the VH and VL pairs of the most enriched antibodies. Recently, studies have been carried out to provide a method of sequencing without losing the VH and VL pairs of antibodies. In the analysis of the selection process by a high-throughput sequencing, the antibody’s genotype is first determined and then their phenotype is characterized [53, 56, 57].

4. Application of Phage Display in the context of DENV and other flavivirus infections

The use of MAbs against an infection pathogen is an area of great interest for research. In Table 2 it is demonstrated MAbs developed for infection disease who have been approved by the FDA. As can be seen, few MAbs are approved for use in infectious diseases, although there is still a strong demand for development in this field. Some challenges involving MAb production against pathogens are their economic viability due to their high cost and if target an episodic disease, there is no supporting for continued production. Moreover, there is a concern about the selection of neutralization-escape mutants [58]. However, they may be notably effective for certain emerging infectious diseases, in which the process of vaccine development could be lengthened and difficult. Thus, MAbs should have more effectiveness for the first response against these diseases [57].

Small molecules are most antibiotic antivirals. However, Phage Display-derived MAbs have an overall success rate of 35% of passage from clinical phase I to launch, compared to an average of 12% for a small-molecule drug candidate [59]. In this regard, Phage Display-derived MAb is considered an important alternative approach to infectious disease treatment compared to classical small-molecule discovery. Raxibacumab is an example of a fast-track designation from the FDA, providing the expedition of the drug to use against *B. anthracis* infection. This bacterium secretes proteins, the lethal factor and the edema factor, that inhibit normal immune system functioning that ultimately cause cell death. The entry of these factors is mediated by the protective antigen (PA), also secreted by the bacteria. Raxibacumab is directed to *B. anthracis* PA and thus prevents the cellular
Application of Phage Display in the context of DENV and other characterized pairs of antibodies. In the analysis of the selection process by a high-throughput sequencing methodology that, although it allows the sequencing of millions of sequences, can only properly read up to 400 base pairs. Therefore, this analysis requires that sequencing errors. The second is the limitation of the high-performance sequencing technologies, called next-generation sequencing (NGS), are used, and they require the use of bioinformatics tools specialized in calculating the enrichment of antibodies. Different tools for this purpose are available, and they can be used to investigate the original diversity of the library; identify all antibodies that enriched, the most enriched, and the rare in the population; and determine the frequency of increase throughout the selection. This is possible because sequencing that can only properly read up to 400 base pairs. Therefore, this analysis requires that sequencing errors. The second is the limitation of the high-performance sequencing programs have been produced to overcome the artifacts introduced by PCR and the gene amplification reaction. However, more accurate pipelines for determining the antibody targets most conducive to the diagnosis and protection of these infections [65, 66]. Different studies are an example of how Phage Display enables the selection of antibodies that induce potently neutralizing antibodies, blocking viral entry into cells [58].

Table 2. Monoclonal antibodies for infectious diseases approved by the FDA.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibody</th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Company</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pending</td>
<td>PA</td>
<td>Human</td>
<td>Anthrax infection</td>
<td>GSK</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Phage Display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raxibacumab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Bacillus anthracis)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zinplava</td>
<td>Toxin B</td>
<td>Human</td>
<td>Clostridium difficile infection</td>
<td>Merck/Dohme</td>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Transgenic mice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bezlotoxumab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trogarzo</td>
<td>CD4</td>
<td>Humanized</td>
<td>HIV infection</td>
<td>TaiMed</td>
<td>2018</td>
<td>Hybridoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibalizumab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Synagis</td>
<td>RSV F</td>
<td>Humanized</td>
<td>Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV) prophylaxis</td>
<td>MedImmune</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>Hybridoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palivizumab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PA, protective antigen; CD4, cluster of differentiation 4; RSV F, respiratory syncytial virus fusion

up took of the lethal factor and edema factor. The MAb was developed by the Phage Display, using a library licensed by Human Genome Sciences (HGS), which now is GlaxoSmithKline (GSK), from Cambridge Antibody Technology. Recombinant PA was used in the biopanning process to select candidates, which were then screened in assays for PA neutralization [60, 61].

The Phage Display technology provides a rapid methodology for building a high-affinity antibody library from immune repertoires. These antibodies can be used to generate diagnostic bases or be tested for therapeutic capability. For example, from the repertoire of B cells of patients who recovered from influenza virus infections or who received vaccination, it was possible to isolate, by Phage Display, several antibodies with the neutralization property of different influenza virus subtypes. Another example of antibody-based immunotherapy developed by Phage Display involves the identification of antibodies specific to different types of coronavirus. These studies are an example of how Phage Display enables the selection of antibodies by an in vitro process, especially for new or mutated pathogens in an outbreak of emergent infectious diseases, as it uses only pathogen-specific antigens [39, 62, 63].

Particularly, MAbs play an important role in antiviral immunity preventing viral replication and disease progress. Antibodies can interfere with virus infection by various mechanisms. The primary mechanism is by targeting the virus surface proteins; antibodies can inhibit virus attachment to cell surface receptors. Another main mechanism is targeting non-receptor-binding regions, such as in endosomal membrane fusion step where neutralization can occur by interfering virus conformational changes. In general, flavivirus particles tend to display on their surface continuum epitopes that induce potently neutralizing antibodies, blocking viral entry into cells [58].

From the understanding of the structure of each flavivirus, it was possible to determine the antibody targets most conducive to the diagnosis and protection of the disease [64]. It is important to note that flaviviruses are not static particles and viral proteins are in a constant dynamic movement, a process known as breathing, in order to transiently reveal new epitopes, and this characteristic influences the detection and neutralization capabilities of antibodies [10].

So far, no MAbs against flavivirus have reached the clinical stages, except for WNV. However, several studies have demonstrated potentially neutralizing MAbs that could be therapeutically used against these infections [65, 66]. Different antibodies have been generated exploring the characteristics of viral epitopes. The E glycoprotein is the main target of neutralizing antibodies, especially the E DIII has
been described to be the most efficient to block adsorption of DENV in vitro [58]. In the field of DENV diagnosis, MAbs have been especially applied to distinguish DENV serotypes [67, 68]. For this purpose E and soluble NS1 proteins are the main targets of these MAbs using different assay formats, such as ELISA and rapid test based on immunochromatography [69].

The pre-existing cross-reactive antibodies can be boosted in a secondary infection with antigenically related molecules; consequently antibody to fusion loop tends to have dominance upon sequential infections with DENV or other flaviviruses. Antibodies to E-dimer epitope (EDE) are divided into two subclasses, EDE1 and EDE2, based on the recognition of the conserved glycan Asn-153 of DENV [58]. EDE1 has already been shown to potently neutralize ZIKV infection; this class of antibody does not require glycosylation for binding [70]. However, EDE2 have a reduced neutralization potential against ZIKV, once these antibodies have a strongly binding dependence on the glycan, which have different positioning between ZIKV and DENV [66].

The generation of monoclonal antibodies by Phage Display can help improve the speed at which new antibodies are produced. The freedom associated with recombinant antibodies also allows them to be customized for various applications, allowing the development of MAbs with binding, functional, and pharmacological characteristics suitable for a therapeutic and diagnostic use [37]. Thus, the use of Phage Display to identify antibodies against DENV, as well as for other flavivirus, can contribute to the knowledge of the specific antigenic properties of the virus, allowing to generate new perspectives for the development of efficient therapies, vaccines, and diagnostic platforms of this virus.

To obtain specific antibodies to the DENV, it is possible to employ different libraries of Phage Display and distinct selection approaches depending on the purpose. Using a llama immune library, a diagnostic methodology was developed based on antibodies capable of binding to the NS1 of the four DENV serotypes, without cross-reacting with NS1 of other flaviviruses. The panning was performed with immobilized antigen, so that in each round, the phage population was incubated with NS1 from one of the serotypes, resulting in phage specific to all forms of NS1. To characterize the diagnostic potential of the antibodies, MAbs were addressed [71]. Lebani et al. [72] isolate four serotype-specific human antibodies through a negative selection strategy. Each MAb was specific for NS1 from a DENV serotype, without cross-linking.

In another approach, Cabezas et al. [73] worked with human naïve library to obtain a panel of antibody fragments with different specificity toward DENV serotypes. The biopanning was made against inactivated DENV-containing supernatants harvested from infected Vero cells for 4 days with each serotype. These supernatants were directly used for Phage Display biopanning. A panel of nine scFvs, where seven were specific for DENV2, DENV3, and DENV4 while the other two were cross-reactive, was obtained. Silva [74] employed a subtractive biopanning, in which a human Fab Phage Display library was first incubated against ZIKV particles, to eliminate the majority of antibodies that binds to this viral particle, and nonbinding phages were then incubated against DENV2 particles, followed by elution of ligand phages. Analysis by NGS of the pool of phages retrieved after four rounds of this biopanning showed that the VH and VL sequences obtained may not have cross-reactivity between DENV2 and ZIKV.

Antibody-based DENV infection therapies developed by Phage Display have also been reported. Saokaew et al. [75] show that a human scFv specific for DIII was able to neutralize DENV2 infection at in vitro assays. The human MAb 5A, originated from a selection of Phage Display, has been shown to be specific to the fusion loop, both in its pre-fusion conformation to the endocytic membrane, before infection, and in its acid-dependent post-fusion conformation, during the final viral infection
process, and proved to be a potent neutralizing antibody of different strains of yellow fever virus in vitro and in vivo. Thus, MAb 5A prevents both virus attachment and fusion. As the fusion loop is a highly conserved antigen, there is a high possibility that 5A neutralizes other flaviviruses [76]. In the same way, Wu et al. [77] identified a panel of human MAbs that target DIII of the ZIKV envelope protein from a large Phage Display naïve antibody library. These germline-like antibodies bound ZIKV DIII specifically with high affinities. These MAbs neutralized the currently circulating ZIKV strains and showed a synergistic effect in neutralizing ZIKV in vitro and in a mouse model of ZIKV infection.

As an example of Phage Display using immune libraries to select high-affinity MAbs, Mwale et al. [78] analyzed the immune response in chicken through the determination of the polyclonal immunoglobulin yolk (IgY) against a truncated Zika virus envelope protein. They induced an immune response in white leghorn laying hens against the ZIKV envelope protein. A high-level titer of anti-ZIKV envelope protein antibodies was detected and after constructed two antibody libraries; they found some scFvs that showed specific binding activities toward the ZIKV envelope protein.

Moreover, Phage Display has been used to find therapeutic antibody fragments against nonstructural proteins. A MAb fragment Fab NS3-specific obtained from a naïve human Fab Phage Display library was shown to inhibit the ATPase and helicase activities of NS3 protein and reduces DENV replication in vitro. The ability to inhibit in vitro DENV replication may be exploited in a therapeutic approach [79]. Using a human scFv Phage Display library, Pourgpair et al. [80] obtained two scFv clones that bound specifically to the NS1 of DENV 2, used as antigen in phage biopanning. They observed that cells infected with DENV2 and treated with selected scFvs had significant reduction of the infectious viral particles in supernatant. Besides that, the analysis of mimotope/epitope mapping indicated that the NS1 sites bound by antibody fragments can lead to interference of the virus replication by affecting the virus release.

5. Final considerations

Over the years many discoveries have been made aiming for the control and treatment of emerging infectious diseases, some of those include the development of efficient drugs that could act specifically in the pathogen to eliminate efficiently. In this way, MAbs emerged as the main biological drugs for this purpose. Moreover, MAbs play an important role in the development of serological diagnostic test that could be used for tracking the spread of disease and determining public health prevention measures and clinical care. There are still great questions around the infection mechanisms by flavivirus, especially related to the cross-reactivity between them and the risk of complications. In this way, the use of effective, fast, and robust approaches to facilitate the development of flavivirus MAbs is a determinant factor.

The Phage Display technology presents a great potential to provide optimized strategies, allowing the obtention of high-affinity human antibodies for a specific target. Some of the main advantages that make this technology so promising are the possibility to obtain human MAbs without in vivo immunization; the enormous diversity of variant antibodies displayed within a single library; the ability to tailor MAbs with the desired properties by using different strategies such as depletion, guided selection, and biochemical control; and the possibility to be applied against practically any kind of target antigen [33]. However, some concerns about Phage Display are the dependence of the initial library quality, the difficulties in the post-selection step involving analysis and recombinant antibody production, and the possibility of
obtention of low-affinity antibodies, especially in naïve libraries [35]. Considering the impact of infectious diseases on the health system and economy, mainly DENV and ZIKV, that co-circulate in tropical countries, MAbs obtained by Phage Display may overcome issues related to versatility and high throughputness compared to other approaches, playing a larger role in the actual and future public health response.

Acknowledgements

The authors would like to thank the Immunology Department of Adolfo Lutz Institute, the Coordination of Improvement of Postgraduate Level Personnel (CAPES), and the National Council for Scientific and Technological Development (CNPq). The authors also thank the Cellular Biology Department from the University of Brazilia, Post-Graduate Program in Molecular Biology (UNB), and Foundation for Scientific and Technological Enterprises (FINATEC) for the financial and technical support. This study was financed under grant CNPq/CAPES/MS-DECIT No. 440812/2016-0 and FINEP under sgrant No. 01.16.0075, under the coordination of Dr. Carlos R. Prudencio.

Conflict of interest

The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Author details

Isaura Beatriz Borges Silva1,2, Renato Kaylan Alves de Oliveira França3, Jacely Medeiros Silva3, Andrea Queiroz Maranhão3 and Carlos Roberto Prudencio*

1 Center of Immunology, Adolfo Lutz Institute, São Paulo/SP, Brazil

2 Interunits Post-Graduate Program in Biotechnology, University of São Paulo, São Paulo/SP, Brazil

3 Molecular Biology Laboratory, CEL/IB, University of Brasília, Brasília/DF, Brazil

*Address all correspondence to: carlos.prudencio@ial.sp.gov.br

IntechOpen

© 2020 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.
References


[15] Batista ICA, Quinan BR, Rocha Alves ÉA, et al. Design and production of dengue virus chimeric proteins useful...


human antibodies from Phage Display repertoires to a single epitope of an antigen. Bio/Technology. 1994;2(9):899. DOI: 10.1038/nbt0994-899


Novel Single Hematophagous Insect RNA Detection Method Supports Its Use as Sentinels to Survey Flaviviruses Circulation


Abstract

Anthropogenic actions, including deforestation, disorganized urbanization, and globalization, contribute to emergence and reemergence of arboviruses worldwide, where Flavivirus is the most prevalent, and its continuous monitoring can help in preventive control strategies. Thus, the aim of this study was to detect flavivirus RNA in single hematophagous insects, which are used as sentinels. Total RNA was extracted from six *Aedes aegypti* stored since 2003 and from 100 Culicidae and collected through CDC trap in a public park of a Brazilian Northwest city of São Paulo State.

Flavivirus was detected through RT/PCR targeting 230–250 bp of the RNA polymerase coding sequence (NS5). PCR amplicons were sequenced by Sanger method, used in comparative analysis over Basic Local Alignment Search Tool (BLAST) in GenBank, and subjected to Neighbor-Joining phylogenetic analyses. Efficiency of Flavivirus diagnosis was confirmed by detection of Dengue virus serotype 2 in *Ae. aegypti*. From the 100 collected insects, 19 were positive for *Culex flavivirus* (CxFV). NS5 partial sequence phylogenetic analysis clustered all CxFV in one branch separated from vertebrate flaviviruses, being applicable to the identification of Flavivirus species. The dipteran RNA extraction methodology described in this work supports detection of flaviviruses in single insects maintained in 80% ethanol, which can be used for constant arbovirus surveillance.

Keywords: dipteran, Flaviviruses, hematophagous insect, molecular diagnosis, RNA extraction, single-insect virus diagnosis

1. Introduction

In recent years, due to anthropogenic actions, including deforestation, disorganized urbanization, and globalization, arboviruses have emerged as a major challenge to global health [1, 2]. The arboviruses (arthropod borne viruses) are transmitted to...
Chapter 8

Novel Single Hematophagous Insect RNA Detection Method Supports Its Use as Sentinels to Survey Flaviviruses Circulation

Juliana Sá Teles de Oliveira Molina,
Andreia Moreira dos Santos Carmo, Gabriel Lopes Pereira,
Leticia Abrantes de Andrade, Felipe Trovalim Jordão,
Rodrigo Buzinaro Suzuki, Luana Prado Rolim de Oliveira,
Aline Diniz Cabral and Márcia Aparecida Sperança

Abstract

Anthropogenic actions, including deforestation, disorganized urbanization, and globalization, contribute to emergence and reemergence of arboviruses worldwide, where Flavivirus is the most prevalent, and its continuous monitoring can help in preventive control strategies. Thus, the aim of this study was to detect flavivirus RNA in single hematophagous insects, which are used as sentinels. Total RNA was extracted from six Aedes aegypti stored since 2003 and from 100 Culicidae and collected through CDC trap in a public park of a Brazilian Northwest city of São Paulo State. Flavivirus was detected through RT/PCR targeting 230–250 bp of the RNA polymerase coding sequence (NS5). PCR amplicons were sequenced by Sanger method, used in comparative analysis over Basic Local Alignment Search Tool (BLAST) in GenBank, and subjected to Neighbor-Joining phylogenetic analyses. Efficiency of Flavivirus diagnosis was confirmed by detection of Dengue virus serotype 2 in Ae. aegypti. From the 100 collected insects, 19 were positive for Culex flavivirus (CxFV). NS5 partial sequence phylogenetic analysis clustered all CxFV in one branch separated from vertebrate flaviviruses, being applicable to the identification of Flavivirus species. The dipteran RNA extraction methodology described in this work supports detection of flaviviruses in single insects maintained in 80% ethanol, which can be used to constant arbovirus surveillance.

Keywords: dipteran, Flaviviruses, hematophagous insect, molecular diagnosis, RNA extraction, single-insect virus diagnosis

1. Introduction

In recent years, due to anthropogenic actions, including deforestation, disorganized urbanization, and globalization, arboviruses have emerged as a major challenge to global health [1, 2]. The arboviruses (arthropod borne viruses) are transmitted to
Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective

humans through the bite of infected hematophagous insects, causing febrile diseases [3], with a broad variety of clinical manifestations, ranging from the absence of symptoms to the severe hemorrhagic and encephalitic disorders [4, 5]. The arbovirus vectors include different species of mosquitoes, flies, and ticks. The most worldwide prevalent arboviruses encompass Dengue Virus (DENV), Yellow Fever Virus (YFV), West Nile Virus (WNV), and Zika Virus (ZIKV) from Flaviviridae family and Flavivirus genus, and Chikungunya Virus (CHIKV) from family Togaviridae and genus Alphavirus [6], which are transmitted through mosquitoes belonging to the Culicidae family, mainly from Culex and Aedes genera [2].

Arbovirus transmissions occur principally in tropical and subtropical areas, since the presence of vector mosquitoes is associated, mainly, with hot and humid environments, fundamental requirements for their reproduction [7]. Recently, with the global warming and increase in international traveling, the dispersion of arthropod vectors is rising, especially mosquitoes of the genus Aedes, and the dissemination of arboviruses is reaching regions considered nonendemic [8–10]. Besides, mosquitoes’ high genetic plasticity enables its adaptation to colder environments and international tourism to tropical and subtropical endemic areas, which contributes to arbovirus vectors’ global dissemination [11, 12].

Dengue is the most prevalent arbovirus and is responsible for an estimate of 390 million annual cases worldwide [13], and 3.9 billion people, living in 128 countries, are on risk of infection [14]. Since 2010, dengue cases have been reported in non-endemic countries in Europe, including France, Croatia, and Portugal, where in 2012, an outbreak occurred with more than 2000 reported cases. In this period, 10 other European countries were affected by dengue fever. Further, among European travelers returning from low incoming endemic countries, dengue fever is the most diagnosed disease, after malaria [10, 15]. In 2016, more than 3.34 million cases of dengue were reported in American countries, Southeast Asia, and the Western Pacific. Only in the Americas, approximately 2.38 million people were affected, with 1032 deaths, including Brazil, responsible for almost 1.5 million of the reported cases [15]. In addition to Dengue, in Brazil, a South American country with high international touristic activity, according to the Ministry of Health, occurred 216,207 cases of Zika fever, another important emerging Flavivirus [16], and 691 cases of yellow fever with 220 confirmed deaths, only in 2016 [17]. This panel entails the flaviviruses negative impact on public health and also causes the economic burden, having direct and indirect consequences [18]. Direct costs include hospitalization, medications, diagnostic tests, vector control, training of professionals, and health surveillance. Among indirect costs are loss of worker productivity and profits, and interference in trade and tourism in affected areas.

There are no effective vaccines available for Dengue, Zika, and Chikungunya fevers [19], and the control of these arboviruses is exclusively implemented by chemical arthropod vector elimination [1]. Therefore, active searching for vectors is necessary to prevent the circulation of known arboviruses. Detection of arboviruses occurs only after detection of human cases, which causes delay in the disease and vector dissemination controls. Thus, to prevent emergency and reemergence of arboviruses, very early detection of vectors and arbovirus and the understanding of their diversity and infection cycle are of great importance. These strategies include also the identification of factors related to the dispersion and entrance of arboviruses in previous indene areas and the identification of wild animal natural reservoirs [20]. Considering the current difficulties in detecting silent circulation of arboviruses and also in obtaining samples from arthropod vectors, human and animal febrile cases, principally in the forests areas, the use of sentinels could be an alternative surveillance approach. Hematophagous insects are present in different wild natural and urban environments, being an excellent group of animal to be used
as sentinel. Thus, in this work, the single-insect nucleic acid extraction method [21] was evaluated in hematophagous dipterans collected in a Brazilian municipal public park using CDC traps, in order to detect RNA from flaviviruses.

2. Materials and methods

2.1 Specimens and ethical aspects

A total of 106 insects of the order Diptera were analyzed, of which 100 were collected in the Municipal Park of the city of Marília—São Paulo, and six were specimens of *Aedes aegypti*, RED strain, of which five were experimentally infected with DENV2. More detailed information on the specimens used in this study is shown in Table 1. The protocol of collection and transport of arthropods in the Municipal Park of the city of Marília—São Paulo was authorized by the Biodiversity Authorization and Information System (SISBIO), of the Chico Mendes Institute for Biodiversity Conservation (ICMBio), Brazilian Ministry of Environment (MMA), under number 64603-1 (10/18/2018). *Ae. aegypti* strain RED specimens infected with DENV2, maintained in a biosafety level 2 (BSL-2) insectary facility in Institute of Biomedical Sciences from University of São Paulo, were gently donated by Margareth de Lara Capurro Guimarães at the Department of Parasitology of the Institute of Biomedical Sciences of the University of São Paulo (USP), of which five were submitted to infection by DENV-2, while one sample was not submitted to infection and was used as a negative control for DENV. These insects were previously used for purposes that are not related to this study and had approval and permissions needed in their own respective study.

This work did not involve collection of human samples, total or partial, and specimens or tissue samples from vertebrate animals and/or embryos. In addition, no threatened or protected species were collected.

2.2 Single-insect nondestructive RNA extraction

For RNA extraction, each dipteran was digested for 16 h at 56°C, inserted in 200 μL of a lysis buffer composed of 200 mM Tris-HCl (pH 7.5), 250 mM NaCl, 25 mM EDTA (pH 8.0), 0.5% of SDS, and 400 μg/mL of proteinase K as described for DNA extraction [21]. Before digestion, ethanol from insects stored in 80% ethanol was removed after washing twice with 1 mL of 1× PBS (137 mM NaCl, 2.7 mM KCl, 10 mM Na2HPO4, and 1.8 mM KH2PO4). Following the incubation period,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Taxon</th>
<th>Storage method</th>
<th>Collection local, data</th>
<th>Number of specimens</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anopheles (Culicidae)</td>
<td>Ethanol 80%</td>
<td>Marília-SP, December 2017</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phlebotomus (Psychodidae)</td>
<td>Ethanol 80%</td>
<td>Marília-SP, December 2017</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceratopogonidae</td>
<td>Ethanol 80%</td>
<td>Marília-SP, November 2017</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cecidomyiidae</td>
<td>Ethanol 80%</td>
<td>Marília-SP, December 2017</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culicinae (Culicidae)</td>
<td>Ethanol 80%</td>
<td>Marília-SP, June 2017</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aedes aegypti</em> (Culicidae)</td>
<td>Frozen at −20 °C</td>
<td>USP-SP, March 2003</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Specimens of dipteran included in the study.
the digestion buffer was transferred to 1.5 mL RNase free tube and submitted to RNA purification. One milliliter of 80% ethanol was added to the insect specimen, which was stored in freezer at −20°C. Total RNA purification for each insect from the obtained digestion solution was performed through Qiagen® RNA Mini Kit and PureLink® RNA Mini Kit according to the manufacturer’s instructions.

2.3 RNA quality and *Flavivirus* nucleic acid detection

The quality and quantity of extracted RNA from each insect were done through agarose gel electrophoresis and by reverse transcription and polymerase chain reaction (RT/PCR), with oligonucleotides that amplify a 464 bp fragment encoding the 28S ribosomal RNA fraction (28S rRNA) of dipteran (*Table 2*). RNA from each insect was diluted into a final volume of 60 μL of RNase free water, and 4 μL was subjected to 1.5% agarose gel electrophoresis in 0.5× TBE buffer and stained with SafeBlue® according to manufacturer’s instructions. Ten insect samples were used to verify quality by RT/PCR, and before RT reaction, 40 μL of the total RNA was treated with DNase I by means of the Biometra Kit from Analytik Jena, following manufacturer’s instructions, being diluted in 40 μL of RNase free water. Subsequently, three complementary DNA (cDNA) syntheses were performed, each with a different oligonucleotide, detailed in *Table 2*, being 0.5 μM of oligonucleotide 28SD7r, six bases random primers from Promega, or Oligo dT18. For each cDNA synthesis, 5.5 μL of one insect total extracted RNA, treated with DNase I, was submitted to RT reaction with 200 units of MMLV Reverse Transcriptase (Invitrogen) following fabricator’s instructions, in a total volume of 20 μL. Two microliter of the obtained cDNAs was used in PCR to amplify a 464 bp fragment corresponding to 28S rRNA of Dipteran (*Table 2*) through Brazil Platinum Taq DNA polymerase (Invitrogen) according to producer’s instructions. PCR condition was one cycle of 94°C for 3 min; 40 cycles of 94°C for 30 s, 50°C for 30 s, and 72°C for 30 s; and 72°C for 7 min. To control DNase I treatment, 5.5 μL of untreated RNA was used directly on PCR. Reaction products were subjected to 1.5% agarose gel electrophoresis in 0.5× TBE buffer, after staining with SafeBlue®.

For *Flavivirus* and DENV-specific detection, 5.5 μL of total RNA was used in RT/PCR with MMLV reverse transcriptase from Invitrogen, to amplify a 250 bp nonstructural protein 5 (NS5) fragment, with the oligonucleotides cFD2 and MAMD (*Table 2*), and a 511 bp fragment, corresponding the junction of the capsid protein (C) and the premembrane protein (prM) of DENV encoding region, through primers D1 and D2 (*Table 2*). The reaction conditions for RT reactions were incubation at 42°C for 1 h, followed by reverse transcriptase inactivation at 80°C for 5 min. PCR conditions for cFD2 and MAMD were 94°C for 3 min; 40 cycles at 94°C for 1 min, 53°C for 1 min, and 72°C for 1 min; and 72°C for 7 min. The same conditions were used with oligonucleotides D1 and D2, except for the association temperature with 50°C. As a positive control of *Flavivirus* amplification, RNA from the Zika Virus and from the vaccine strain of Yellow Fever Virus was used in RT/PCR. PCR products were subjected to 1.5% agarose gel electrophoresis in 0.5× TBE buffer, after staining with SafeBlue®.

2.4 Sequencing and phylogenetic analysis

PCR positive fragments were purified by using the Thermo Scientific GeneJET PCR Purification Kit and sequenced with BigDye 3.1 (Applied Biosystems®) and PCR fragment-specific oligonucleotides, according to manufacturer’s instructions. Sequence cycle conditions were 96°C for 1 min; 39 cycles at 96°C for 15 s, 50°C for 15 s, and 60°C for 4 min. After DNA precipitation
the digestion buffer was transferred to 1.5 mL RNase free tube and submitted to RNA purification. One milliliter of 80% ethanol was added to the insect specimen, which was stored in freezer at −20°C. Total RNA purification for each insect from the obtained digestion solution was performed through Qiagen® RNA Mini Kit and PureLink® RNA Mini Kit according to the manufacturer’ s instructions.

2.3 RNA quality and Flavivirus nucleic acid detection

The quality and quantity of extracted RNA from each insect were done through agarose gel electrophoresis and by reverse transcription and polymerase chain reaction (RT/PCR), with oligonucleotides that amplify a 464 bp fragment encoding the 28S ribosomal RNA fraction (28S rRNA) of dipteran (Table 2). RNA from each insect was diluted into a final volume of 60 μL of RNase free water, and 4 μL was subjected to 1.5% agarose gel electrophoresis in 0.5× TBE buffer and stained with SafeBlue® according to manufacturer’ s instructions. Ten insect samples were used to verify quality by RT/PCR, and before RT reaction, 40 μL of the total RNA was treated with DNase I by means of the Biometra Kit from Analytik Jena, following manufacturer’ s instructions, being diluted in 40 μL of RNase free water. Subsequently, three complementary DNA (cDNA) syntheses were performed, each with a different oligonucleotide, detailed in Table 2, being 0.5 μM of oligonucleotide 28SD7r, six bases random primers from Promega, or Oligo dT18. For each cDNA synthesis, 5.5 μL of one insect total extracted RNA, treated with DNase I, was submitted to RT reaction with 200 units of MMLV Reverse Transcriptase (Invitrogen) following fabricator’ s instructions, in a total volume of 20 μL. Two microliter of the obtained cDNAs was used in PCR to amplify a 464 bp fragment corresponding to 28S rRNA of Dipteran (Table 2) through Brazil Platinum Taq DNA polymerase (Invitrogen) according to producer’ s instructions. PCR condition was one cycle of 94°C for 3 min; 40 cycles of 94°C for 30 s, 50°C for 30 s, and 72°C for 30 s; and 72°C for 7 min. To control DNase I treatment, 5.5 μL of untreated RNA was used directly on PCR. Reaction products were subjected to 1.5% agarose gel electrophoresis in 0.5× TBE buffer, after staining with SafeBlue®.

For Flavivirus and DENV-specific detection, 5.5 μL of total RNA was used in RT/PCR with MMLV reverse transcriptase from Invitrogen, to amplify a 250 bp nonstructural protein 5 (NS5) fragment, with the oligonucleotides cFD2 and MAMD (Table 2), and a 511 bp fragment, corresponding the junction of the capsid protein (C) and the premembrane protein (prM) of DENV encoding region, through primers D1 and D2 (Table 2). The reaction conditions for RT reactions were incubation at 42°C for 1 h, followed by reverse transcriptase inactivation at 80°C for 5 min. PCR conditions for cFD2 and MAMD were 94°C for 3 min; 40 cycles at 94°C for 1 min, 53°C for 1 min, and 72°C for 1 min; and 72°C for 7 min. The same conditions were used with oligonucleotides D1 and D2, except for the association temperature with 50°C. As a positive control of Flavivirus amplification, RNA from the Zika Virus and from the vaccine strain of Yellow Fever Virus was used in RT/PCR. PCR products were subjected to 1.5% agarose gel electrophoresis in 0.5× TBE buffer, after staining with SafeBlue®.

2.4 Sequencing and phylogenetic analysis

PCR positive fragments were purified by using the Thermo Scientific GeneJET PCR Purification Kit and sequenced with BigDye 3.1 (Applied Biosystems®) and PCR fragment-specific oligonucleotides, according to manufacturer’ s instructions. Sequence cycle conditions were 96°C for 1 min; 39 cycles at 96°C for 15 s, 50°C for 15 s, and 60°C for 4 min. After DNA precipitation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primers</th>
<th>Sequence 5′-3′</th>
<th>Amplicon size</th>
<th>Genomic region</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>28SD7forw</td>
<td>AGAGAGAGTTCAAGAGTACGTG</td>
<td>464 bp</td>
<td>28S rRNA (Diptera)</td>
<td>[22]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28SD7rev</td>
<td>TTGGTCCGTGTTTCAAGACGGG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1 forw</td>
<td>TCAATATGCTGAAACGCGAGAAACC</td>
<td>511 bp</td>
<td>C/prM (DENV)</td>
<td>[23]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2 rev</td>
<td>TTGCACCAACAGTCAATGCTCTCAGGTTC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cFD2 rev</td>
<td>GTGTCCACGCCGCCGTGTTCATCAGC</td>
<td>220–250 bp</td>
<td>NSS (Flavivirus)</td>
<td>[24]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAMD forw</td>
<td>AACATGATGGGAAARAGRGA AA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligo dT18</td>
<td>TTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Poly A tail</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. Description of the oligonucleotides used in this study.
with 10% of NaOAc (3 M, pH 5.2), 10% of 1.5 μL of glycogen (1 mg/mL), and two volumes of ethanol, the reactions were pelleted by centrifugation and were washed with 70% of ethanol. The reactions were loaded in an ABI PRISM® 3130XL Genetic Analyzer /HITACHI (16 capillaries). The source and specificity of the obtained sequences were evaluated by BLAST in GenBank [25].

The nucleotide and amino acid partial 226 bp sequence corresponding to the NS5 protein of Flavivirus were used to infer the evolutionary history by the Neighbor-Joining method [26]. Phylogenetic trees of confidence value of phylogenetic trees was determined by bootstrap analysis with 1000 replicates, for individual branches [27]. The length of branches was calculated by using the Tamura-Nei method [28] for nucleotides and the Poisson corrected method for amino acid sequences [29]. The coding (first, second, and third codon) and non-coding regions were included in the analysis, and all positions containing gaps and lack of data were discarded only after pairwise comparisons. Phylogenetic analyses were conducted using MEGA4 software [30].

In analysis, partial 16 NS5 sequences of CxFV generated in this study from Culicidae mosquitoes from Marilia, São Paulo, were aligned with the corresponding sequences from YFV vaccine strain, Zika Virus, and DENV from serotype 2 and with the sequences deposited in GenBank from CxFV isolated from China in Shanghai (MG602497), Argentina (GenBank KU726615), Africa in Uganda (GenBank GQ165808), and the Brazilian States of Mato Grosso (GenBank KY349933) and São Paulo, and the city of São José do Rio Preto (GenBank KT726939), using the CLUSTAL X [31]. Two alignments were generated to Neighbor-Joining analysis: alignment 1, consisting of nucleotide sequences (226 characters) (S1), and alignment 2, containing amino acid sequences (75 residues) (S2).

3. Results

Agarose gel electrophoresis analysis of the total RNA extracted from 10 specimens of dipteron maintained in 80% ethanol by the nondestructive nucleic acid extraction method described before [21] showed integrity, and an approximately amount of 1 μg/mL, per specimen (Figure 1). The presence of RNA was also confirmed by RT/PCR to amplify a 464 bp corresponding to the 28S rRNA from dipteran, after treatment of RNA with DNase I (Figure 2). The presence of DNA was observed in all samples (Figure 2; DNA). After DNase I treatment, DNA was present in samples 1, 2, 6, and 8, corresponding to PCR products obtained from

![Figure 1](image1.png)

Figure 1. 1.5% Agarose gel electrophoresis containing 4 μL of extracted total RNA from a single dipteron. M, molecular size marker (O’GeneRuler DNA Ladder—1 kb). Lanes 1–10 correspond to different hematophagous dipterans collected in the Municipal Park of the city of Marília—São Paulo.
cDNA synthesized with oligo (dT), which should amplify mRNA and not the 28S rRNA. Specific RNA amplification was observed in samples, 3, 4, 5, 7, 9, and 10, after 28S rRNA PCR performed on cDNA synthesized with random six nucleotides and 28S rRNA-specific oligonucleotides (Figure 2).

To verify the feasibility to use the dipteran extracted RNA for Flavivirus molecular diagnosis, initially, specimens of Ae. aegypti infected with DENV2 and frozen at −20°C, since 2003, were submitted to Flavivirus and to DENV-specific diagnostic methods by RT/PCR. Figure 3 shows that from five Ae. aegypti infected with DENV2, four specimens were positive for NS5-based Flavivirus detection method. The specificity of the obtained PCR fragments, obtained from each Ae. aegypti specimen, was confirmed through Sanger sequencing. The DENV-specific diagnostic based on C/prM encoding gene was negative for all Ae. aegypti specimens tested (data not shown).

After Flavivirus molecular diagnosis standardization, the NS5-based detection method was applied to the total RNA extracted of the remaining Culicidae specimens included in the study (Figure 4), and 19 were positive for a 250 bp PCR fragment, which were sequenced by Sanger method. BLAST evaluation of the 19 amplicons showed 94–96% similarity to CxFV described in Africa, Argentina, China, and Brazil (Cuiabá in the State of Mato Grosso; São José do Rio Preto in the State of Sao Paulo).
Sixteen CxFV nucleotide (226 bp in length) and translated partial NS5 amino acid (75 residues) sequences, with good quality, were used for phylogenetic reconstruction by the Neighbor-Joining method (Figures 5 and 6). NS5 nucleotide and amino acidic partial sequence of CxFV obtained from culicids of Marilia varied from 0 to 3% among the same virus species of other Brazilian regions, Africa, Argentina, and China.

The morphological characteristics of 19 CxFV infected dipterans were observed by optical microscopy in order to confirm the taxonomic position and to identify their gender. Nineteen specimens confirmed to belong to the genus *Culex* (Diptera: Culicidae); 9 specimens were females (47.37%), and 10 (52.63%) were males (Figure 7). The images were made after RNA extraction, showing the efficiency of the technique in preserving the specimen chitinous skeleton. Blood cells in ingurgitated females are also visible before and after RNA extraction (Figure 8).

### 4. Discussion

The technique of RNA extraction from a single mosquito preserving their chitinous cytoskeleton is described for the first time, and its use can contribute not only to the detection of infectious agents with RNA genome but also to the evolutionary and morphological studies of Diptera since the RNA molecule is an important tool to understand the physiology and evolutionary relationships among organisms [32], and the physical structure of the insect is maintained [21]. Also, vectorial capability of arthropods to several infectious agents can be investigated using specific molecules, with conditional expression profiles, as biomarkers. Molecular identification...
Sixteen CxFV nucleotide (226 bp in length) and translated partial NS5 amino acid (75 residues) sequences, with good quality, were used for phylogenetic reconstruction by the Neighbor-Joining method (Figures 5 and 6). NS5 nucleotide and amino acidic partial sequence of CxFV obtained from culicids of Marilia.

Figure 3. 1.5% Agarose gel electrophoresis stained with SafeBlue® for analysis of the RT/PCR products obtained from Ae. aegypti infected with DENV-2. C−, PCR negative control performed with water; 1, Ae. aegypti uninfected; 2–5, samples of Ae. aegypti infected with DENV-2. The PCR reaction was done with primers cFD2 and MAMD, which amplify a 250 bp fragment corresponding to Flavivirus NS5 encoding gene.

Figure 4. 2% Agarose gel electrophoresis for analysis of Flavivirus molecular diagnosis based on the 250 bp PCR fragment corresponding to NS5 encoding gene. M, molecular size marker (Sinapse Biotecnologia 100 pb DNA Ladder); C−, negative control (water); C+, positive control (YFV); 35–83, samples of Culicidae mosquitoes collected in the Municipal Park of the city of Marília—São Paulo. Positive samples: 36, 44, 47, 48, 55, 56, 61, 62, 73, 76, and 82.

1.5% Agarose gel electrophoresis stained with SafeBlue® for analysis of the RT/PCR products obtained from Ae. aegypti infected with DENV-2. C−, PCR negative control performed with water; 1, Ae. aegypti uninfected; 2–5, samples of Ae. aegypti infected with DENV-2. The PCR reaction was done with primers cFD2 and MAMD, which amplify a 250 bp fragment corresponding to Flavivirus NS5 encoding gene.

Figure 4. 2% Agarose gel electrophoresis for analysis of Flavivirus molecular diagnosis based on the 250 bp PCR fragment corresponding to NS5 encoding gene. M, molecular size marker (Sinapse Biotecnologia 100 pb DNA Ladder); C−, negative control (water); C+, positive control (YFV); 35–83, samples of Culicidae mosquitoes collected in the Municipal Park of the city of Marília—São Paulo. Positive samples: 36, 44, 47, 48, 55, 56, 61, 62, 73, 76, and 82.

The morphological characteristics of 19 CxFV infected dipterans were observed by optical microscopy in order to confirm the taxonomic position and to identify their gender. Nineteen specimens confirmed to belong to the genus Culex (Diptera: Culicidae); 9 specimens were females (47.37%), and 10 (52.63%) were males (Figure 7). The images were made after RNA extraction, showing the efficiency of the technique in preserving the specimen chitinous skeleton. Blood cells in ingurgitated females are also visible before and after RNA extraction (Figure 8).

Figure 5. Phylogenetic analysis based on partial nucleotide sequence of NS5 encoding gene from C. flavivirus. The figure shows the best tree obtained after Neighbor-Joining phylogenetic analysis with the sum of branch lengths of 1.11310318. The tree was constructed after alignment of 226 nucleotides of 16 translated NS5 partial sequences of C. flavivirus obtained from Culicidae mosquitoes from Marilia—São Paulo, YFV vaccine strain, Zika Virus, and DENV2 and sequences recovered from GenBank of C. flavivirus isolated from China in Shanghai (MG602497), Argentina (KU726615), Africa in Uganda (GQ365808), and the Brazilian states of Mato Grosso (KY349933) and São Paulo, and the city of São José do Rio Preto (KT726939).

4. Discussion

The technique of RNA extraction from a single mosquito preserving their chitinous cytoskeleton is described for the first time, and its use can contribute not only to the detection of infectious agents with RNA genome but also to the evolutionary and morphological studies of Diptera since the RNA molecule is an important tool to understand the physiology and evolutionary relationships among organisms [32], and the physical structure of the insect is maintained [21]. Also, vectorial capability of arthropods to several infectious agents can be investigated using specific molecules, with conditional expression profiles, as biomarkers. Molecular identification...
of the arthropod specimen can be performed by RT/PCR on RNA using oligonucleotides complementary to barcode genes. Also, if DNA is necessary, after proteinase K solution treatment, an aliquot of the arthropod nucleic acid solution can be used for DNA extraction.

Genome of the most important medical arboviruses is composed of RNA, and research works on the detection of these viruses in hematophagous mosquitoes are accomplished on pools of 20–50 specimens, which are macerated and destroyed [33–36]. In this work, a good quality of RNA was obtained from a single dipteran specimen, which was confirmed by electrophoresis in agarose gels (Figure 1) and by a specific amplification of a 464 bp fragment of the 28S fraction of diptera rRNA, after DNase I treatment (Figure 2). The RNA obtained from a single insect was appropriately to detect DENV-2 in frozen in vitro infected Ae. aegypti stored for approximately 15 years (Figure 3). Probably, the extraction of nucleic acid without maceration of mosquito cells circumvents liberation of high amounts of proteases, which when associated with slow tissue proteinase K digestion preserves the quality of the RNA. These results point toward the possibility to use the presented methodology to investigate undisclosed arthropod vectors through analysis of specific pathogen molecules expressing in the arthropod host. Moreover, since hematophagous dipterans are broadly disseminated, it can also be used as sentinels of infectious agent presenting RNA genome, contributing directly to epidemiological surveillance of arboviruses.

Different geographical regions present divergences in arthropod infectious diseases vectors diversity and distribution. In Brazil, the main urban vector for YFV is Ae. aegypti [18, 37]. Moreover, a Brazilian study carried out in the Recife city of Pernambuco State revealed the transmission of ZIKV not only by Culex quinquefasciatus but...
of infectious agent presenting RNA genome, contributing directly to epidemiological surveillance of arboviruses.

Different geographical regions present divergences in arthropod infectious diseases vectors diversity and distribution. In Brazil, the main urban vector for YFV is *Ae. aegypti*, whereas in the wild, it is the *Haemagogus janthinomys* [18, 37]. Moreover, a Brazilian study carried out in the Recife city of Pernambuco State revealed the transmission of ZIKV not only by *Culex quinquefasciatus* and but
also by *Aedes* mosquitoes, as traditionally accepted [38]. The single insect RNA extraction method facilitates the identification of arboviruses and also the blood source ingurgitated by a dipteran through molecular techniques, since each individual insect feeds on few vertebrates [35] (Figure 8). Furthermore, even after nucleic acid extraction, the taxonomic position of the dipteran can be reevaluated (Figure 7).

*Flavivirus* diagnosis of 100 culicids collected in the city of Marilia, from São Paulo Brazilian State, based on NS5, revealed the occurrence of 19 positive specimens (19%) to CxFV. These viruses are part of the insect-specific flavivirus (ISF) group and have a wide geographic distribution, encompassing tropical and temperate regions, in various insect groups [39]. There is evidence that ISF infection may suppress or raise the rate of *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* replication of medical important flaviviruses [40]. A study conducted with Palm Creek virus (PCV), another ISF, originally found in Northern Australia, demonstrated that previously infected insect cells were suppressed for WNV and Murray Valley Encephalitis Virus replication, two important human arboviruses [41]. Virus replication suppression by ISF is also associated with mosquito strains [42], as demonstrated for WNV infection in two different lineages of *C. quinquefasciatus*. The mosquitoes isolated in Honduras presented increased WNV transmission rate when infected with CxFV. The ISF Nhumirim virus (NHUV), first isolated in the Pantanal region of Brazil, was evaluated in the growth and replication rates of ZIKV in insect cells [43]. They found that both in the previously inoculated cells and in cells coinoculated with NHUV, growth, and replication rates of ZIKV were significantly reduced. Also, in this work, the rates of ZIKV infection in *Ae. aegypti* infected with NHUV were significantly reduced, but the transmission rate was maintained. According to Romo (2018), ISFs can be used as models to understand the mechanisms involved in virus interference infection process, which may be used to reduce or suppress infections of important human pathogens in arthropod virus vectors. The methodology described in this work enables investigations of interactions among medical important flavivirus and ISFs at natural mosquito population level through the use of field collected specimens.

It is believed that *Culex flaviviruses* may be specific to the culicid species and also to the region from which it is obtained [44]. In order to investigate the specificity of CxFV from Marilia, a phylogenetic reconstruction analysis was performed using homologous partial NS5 sequences of CxFV isolates from China, Africa, Argentina, and two Brazilian isolates (one in Mato Grosso and the other in São José of Rio Preto, São Paulo). The nucleotide and amino acid sequences corresponding to the *Flavivirus* partial NS5 protein varied little among them (about 0–3%). Two Neighbor-Joining-based phylogenetic trees constructed with partial NS5 nucleotide (Figure 5) and amino acid (Figure 6) homologous sequences showed the clustering of flaviviruses in two main branches, one formed by human pathogens (DENV, YFV, and ZIKV), and the other formed by the CxFV. The first branch is formed by taxa that share the same capacity to infect mammalian vertebrate cells, including humans, and present the *Ae. aegypti* as the main vector [45, 46]. The second branch is formed by organisms that differ in origin and time of collection. However, in the tree obtained with the nucleotide sequences, it is possible to observe a clade formed by all the records obtained from Marilia, except for the specimen identified by number 48, which was closest to the CxFV of China. This result was different when the tree was constructed with amino acid sequences, where there was no geographical clustering of CxFV. Perhaps, the molecular marker employed in this work is not appropriate to investigate CxFV geographical specificity, and more studies are needed to explore the association of their genetic variability with geographical distribution and/or with *Culex* species and strains.
5. Conclusions

The single dipteran RNA extraction technique described in this work permits the use of hematophagous insects as sentinels to detect arboviruses, preserving the chitinous skeleton of the insect and guaranteeing the subsequent morphological studies. The possibility to obtain RNA from a single dipteran also makes possible the investigation of infectious agent’s vector capability and the identification of the ingurgitated blood meal source, enabling the description of arthropod alimentary habit and an indication of which vertebrates may be implicated in a virus life cycle. The method also opens the possibility for constant arbovirus surveillance, which can be used to prevent and control epidemics that affect millions of people each year. The presence of CxFV in C. flavivirus vectors may interfere with replication, transmission, and infection rates of arboviruses of medical importance, and the method described facilitates natural population studies.

Acknowledgements

*Aedes aegypti* infected and noninfected with DENV-2 was kindly donated by Dr. Margareth de Lara Capurro Guimarães from the Parasitology Department of the Instituto de Ciências Biomédicas da Universidade de São Paulo. All authors are grateful to the Master Daubian Santos who contributed to morphological analysis of dipterans.

This work was supported by the Fundação de Amparo a Pesquisa do Estado de São Paulo (FAPESP) [grant number 2016/14514-4 and scholarships to Leticia Abrantes Andrade, fellow number 2018/05133-2 and Luana Prado Rolim de Oliveira, fellow number 2019/11384-0]; the Pró-reitoria de Extensão da Universidade Federal do ABC (PROEC-UFABC) [grant number PJ010-2017]; Coordenação de Aperfeiçoamento de Pessoal de Nível Superior (CAPES); and Universidade Federal do ABC (UFABC).

Conflict of interest

The authors declare no conflict of interest.
Author details

Juliana Sá Teles de Oliveira Molina¹, Andreia Moreira dos Santos Carmo², Gabriel Lopes Pereira³, Leticia Abrantes de Andrade³, Felipe Trovalim Jordão¹, Rodrigo Buzinaro Suzuki¹,³,⁴, Luana Prado Rolim de Oliveira¹, Aline Diniz Cabral¹ and Márcia Aparecida Sperança¹*

¹ Centro de Ciências Naturais e Humanas, Universidade Federal do ABC, São Paulo, Brazil
² Secretaria do Estado da Saúde do Estado de São Paulo, Centro de Laboratório Regional VIII, Instituto Adolfo Lutz, São Paulo, Brazil
³ Department of Parasitology, Marilia Medical School, São Paulo, Brazil
⁴ School of Medicine, University of Marilia, São Paulo, Brazil

*Address all correspondence to: marcia.speranca@ufabc.edu.br

IntechOpen

© 2020 The Author(s). Licensee IntechOpen. This chapter is distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution License (http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0), which permits unrestricted use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited.
References


[33] Serra OP, Cardoso BF, Ribeiro AL, Santos FA, Shessarenko RD. Mayaro virus and dengue virus 1 and 4 natural infection in culicids from Cuiaba, state of Mato Grosso, Brazil. Memórias do Instituto Oswaldo Cruz. 2016;111(1):20-29

[34] Ridgeway JA, Timm AE. Comparison of RNA isolation methods from insect larvae. Journal of Insect


[37] Brasil MS. Febre Amarela: Ministérios da Saúde atualiza casos no país. In: Epidemiológica DdV. 2018


Dengue Fever in a One Health Perspective underlines important aspects of dengue virus, the most prevalent and life-threatening arbovirus in the world. Over three sections, chapters cover such topics as biological and environmental aspects, physiopathology, molecular biology, diagnosis, and control strategies. The first section provides knowledge on basic aspects of dengue virus biology and its emergence and re-emergence associated to environmental changes. The second section includes two chapters on dengue immunopathology, a drawback in disease control and vaccine development. Finally, the third section examines molecular biology tools employed in dengue virus immunopathogenesis studies, diagnosis, drug design, and in the use of vectors as sentinels in surveillance and vector biology studies.